

## Fast Seduction 101 Player Guide

### 1.1 Introduction

There are TONS of politically correct dating (blech) and romance (blech blech) resources on the Internet. This is not one of them.

In this no-nonsense guide you will NOT find information on the best chocolate you should give a girl on Valentine's day. Or how many flowers to give or what kind or color. You will not find long discussions on where to take her on the first date or how to make candlelight dinners or pick out engagement rings or crap like that. Instead, what you will find is a flood of information, organized in succinct and clear order on how to Locate, Approach, Attract, Seduce, and Lay as many women as you can handle with great speed and efficiency. All kinds of women. Specifically, this guide is geared towards getting and laying **HBs** (Hot Babes) although that term is subjective and it really depends on what YOU think is hot. Either way, read this guide and learn. Your eyes will be opened and your life will change.

Contrary to many people's opinion, this guide isn't about lame gimmicks or tricks, it is about improving yourself. It is about improving your state of mind, what you believe you can achieve, how far you can go and how much you can learn. Portions of this guide may offend some readers. I guess sometimes people can't take the truth if it goes against what society has programmed into their belief system. The useful information in this guide won't be buried in heaps of annoying psycho babble or filler. The information isn't hidden between the lines and under some agonizing subtext. It is out in the open, clearly exposed, and organized in such a way that you can GET the understanding. It is organized to help you learn and take advantage of your new knowledge quickly.

Some guys out there reading this right now may be thinking But I'm too ugly or stupid or boring or poor or weak or shy or etc to be able to take advantage of knowledge on how to meet and attract hot babes! Stop right there. How in the world do you ever expect to succeed with an attitude like that? Thinking that way is a setup for failure before even giving yourself a chance to try. Any time in the past where things didn't go your way was NOT the result of a deficiency within yourself or have anything to do with your perceived limitations. It was the insecurities themselves, the simple idea that you believed you could not succeed. You have nothing to fear but fear itself. Getting rid of that fear is your first step. It is a difficult and trying step for a lot of guys, but working through this guide will, at minimum, help you achieve that primary goal.

You will soon realize that having hot, interesting, amazing women in your life is not about getting lucky. Luck plays no factor here. You will not read anything in this guide about how much luck it takes to achieve anything. Rather, everything is in your control. However, to achieve that control and to gain more and more confidence in your abilities, it takes more than just reading this guide. You have to go out there and do stuff. You should look at this guide as a roadmap to a pot of gold. You won't get that gold unless you get off your ass and get in your car and DRIVE. You won't learn anything along the way unless you stop that car often and take a look around, interact with your environment, affect that environment, then move on back to driving towards your primary destination.

A lot of the information contained in this guide was or is gleaned mostly from the **ASF** newsgroup and miscellaneous associated web sites. You will find references to people and products (i.e. Ross Jeffries' Speed Seduction material and courseware) which have a strong influence on the postings in that group. I first ran across **ASF** in late 1999, while still an **AFC** trying to find useful information that just could not be found anywhere else on the Internet. I wasn't looking for bullshit dating advice, I was looking for advice on why the hell I wasn't attracting tons of women. Sure, I was a kind of introverted (somewhat shy) guy, but I kept thinking I have a good job, a nice house, a nice car, am funny, smart, great guy, not too bad looking, and emotionally balanced. So how come I wasn't getting the babes? How come I looked all around and sometimes see guys who have much less going for them than me yet are walking around with hot, interesting chicks and I'm lucky to get an occasional date with an average, boring chick? Before running across **ASF**, I had remembered reading (and printing out) some of Ross' old Get LAID newsletters but at that time in my life I was so much of an **AFC** that I just didn't get the blatant clarity of the information in those writings. It was like That's just too damn easy and surreal - this is BS. I'll just keep doing what I'm doing and eventually will figure all this out.

What a chump I was. And then I found **ASF** and it all became clear. All of a sudden, I had an epiphany and I began to get it. Now all I had to do was go out and actually do what all these guys were talking about. An **AFC** first coming across **ASF** will think This is all just too weird and surreal- how in the world does a guy get hot babes following these absurd methods? Chicks will get pissed off. I will get slapped. I've seen it happen all the time on TV or in movies. I will get laughed at. It's all tricks. It doesn't make sense. It's confusing. I can't remember all this. etc. But somehow I felt there was something more. So, being the geek that I am, I started archiving all the posts and then one day decided to suck down and archive every post ever made to **ASF** in one big database. Then I made it [searchable](#) and let other people use it. Then I

decided that I needed wingmen to help me PU (until I was comfortable on my own) and created PAIR. Then I noticed that a lot of ASF newbies were posting the same damn questions over-and-over and I revamped the group's FAQ which I make sure is posted regularly. Then, in the middle of 2000 I got caught up with work and didn't get much chance at all to keep my momentum going. But ASF still drew my attention and, towards the end of last year, I hooked up with a couple of great wingmen and have been improving my game dramatically since then.

I present this guide and all it's features (as well as the whole site) as my gift to the world. Specifically, I want it to reach all those AFCs out there who are just like I was most of my life until recently. I want them to have the information that will help them succeed with the kinds of women they are interested in and not have to settle for any less.

On my scale, 1 out of 5 chicks are fuckable before getting to know them and, of the remaining 4 only 1 of them might be fuckable after getting to know them.

Formhandle's comment: Keep in mind that other people's rating systems vary widely. A lot of people would consider anything above 8.0 a HB. Not that we should rank females in generic categories like this, but hey, we gotta track our successes somehow. Another thing to keep in mind is that some 8.0+s will have a < 5.0 personality but some 5.0+s will have a 8.0 personality. Some guys also like to differentiate between the face and body. E.g. She was a 7.5 or 8.5, meaning a 7.5 face and 8.5 body (or is it the other way around?). Got it? Don't got it? OK: 1 is bad 10 is good. Simple enough?

Also, some guys rate HBs on whether they could be a model, porn star, or stripper in order to determine the difference between an 8, 9, 9.5. I personally rate looks based on how much they turn my own eyes on rather than if they appeal to the masses. I'm an artist so I have a different aesthetic taste and prefer girls who are more natural looking than waify and more vibrant than curvy. For example, although I would fuck Pamela Anderson given the chance, she would only rate an 8.5-8.7 on my scale.

## 2 The Basic Rules

### 2.1 The 3 seconds rule

The 3 seconds rule was coined by Mystery, a PUA and regular poster on ASF. The point of the 3s rule is to propel you to approach women fast enough to keep your internal voice from talking you out of it and avoid hesitation. You do not want a woman to see you hesitate. The longer you hesitate, the more insecure and sappy you appear. Also, hesitation creates an added sense of nervousness to your mental state - a personality trait you do not want to portray when approaching women.

Even if you can't think of any way to initiate a conversation with a woman, whatever you do, don't break the 3s rule! Act in 3 seconds as the default rule, even if you have no idea how you will continue. If you don't have an opener or opening line in mind by the time you're in front of her, at least just say Hi. If you act in 3 seconds, she will notice it, no matter where she just came in from or where you came from or how you passed by each other. She will see the spontaneity and decisiveness in your approach and it can only work in your favor. If you wait, hesitate, then decide to approach, you are in a weaker situation. Hesitating will give you self-doubt a chance to create imaginary bad outcomes and add unneeded insecurity to your approach.

With the 3s rule, you don't need to wait for eye contact or for her to notice you or for an opportunity to present itself. You simply see something you like and you go right up to it. You are also doing yourself a favor by following the 3s rule. In three seconds, you have no time to become nervous, self-conscious, sweaty, shaky - all the obvious signs of an AFC: lacking confidence, quality, power, or assertiveness, a weakling around women, a pariah to beautiful girls. Even if you start sweating, or getting shaky or stutter while talking to the woman after following the 3s rule, you weren't that way when you initiated contact. The first impression is what counts. If that first impression of you is of a confident and spontaneous man, her feelings for you will be positive from the start, which greatly minimizes the chance of you turning into a pile of jelly while talking with her. It sets the pace and helps keep your inner voice at bay, allowing you the chance to keep up your confidence.

The 3s rule, though, is not absolute - you may simply not notice her when she enters your environment, or maybe you'll be tied up with something that might in some way stop you from approaching her (real obstacles, not your imagined ones). The 3 seconds start counting from the moment you have spotted her and are free to approach. When those two conditions are met, you really don't have the time to think deep thoughts, or try and figure out whether or not she noticed that you didn't approach her because you were either too preoccupied, restrained, or simply oblivious - the clock is always ticking, so move it!

vampire2727, ASF: The worst part of not using the 3s rule is when the girl sees you hesitating.

Mike, ASF: When approaching these chicks, I used Mystery's 3 second rule approach (which I rely on heavily) and tried to pick out something about them to comment on. It could be a book, something they are wearing, questions about something that they MAY (not necessarily DO) have knowledge on, something we have in common, whatever.

Formhandle's thoughts on the 3 seconds rule:

There is a reason it's a RULE and not just a recommendation. In just about any situation, you are better off approaching quickly and without hesitation after seeing the chick rather than waiting around to think about the perfect opener or hesitating because of self-doubt. Most AFCs just stand or sit around, gazing at the HB they want to approach rather than just going up and doing the approach. While they stand or sit there, the voice in their head goes through every possible rejection scenario and scares the hell out of them. They cause themselves to get nervous and scared and if they finally do get the nerve to do the approach, they are walking up to her as a quivering pile of jelly. Waiting also creates time for a cockblock to appear. The longer you wait, the more time gets created for cockblock scenarios to present themselves.

The rule is not chiseled in stone, though, and some circumstances aren't quite 3s material. You can't just walk up to a chick and chat her up while she's depositing a check at a bank teller window, for example. Also, sometimes you are in a room full of HBs and you need time to scan for ones that you actually want to approach. You obviously can't approach 2 chicks in 3 seconds who are on different ends of a room. But you also shouldn't stand around for too long if you've seen a chick that you DO want to approach. Just go and do it. If you can't think of anything, say Hi. Usually, it's also better to have a default opener ready for all situations if you want to give yourself more confidence and less reason to hesitate. If you're with a wingman, you may also want to do a Mr. Smooth type approach. If your target is in a group, you may also want to brush up on group approach techniques.

## **2.2 Look and feel your best, all the time**

If you want to be able to talk to girls everywhere, you have to be primed at all times, in both the physical and emotional sense. That means looking as good as you can as often as possible. People meet each other in the strangest and most unexpected places. If you never know when to look your best, looking your best at all times is the optimal default. Yes, some women like thick stubble on a man's face, or messy sweatshirts, or sloppy hair, but most women prefer a neat and clean look. That doesn't mean you have to shave twice a day and walk around in Armani suits all the time, just that you should take care to be clean, organized (yet casual) in your appearance, your clothes match, your hair is not a mess, and you're wearing a good pair of shoes (women like shoes - just accept it). Also, it means exercising regularly, eating healthier, and getting enough sleep. When you look your best, you feel your best and you need to feel great to properly do PUs. Feeling great adds to your confidence. When you have confidence, your rapport building skills with beautiful women will come more naturally.

## **2.3 Be the Alfa or Dominant male**

NightLight9, ASF: The Alpha male - I use this phrase a lot Here is quick run down of what it means to me. If you watch animal shows on PBS or Discovery Channel, many species have a dominant male who has sex with all the females in the group, while the other males get none while waiting for him to die or until they are tough enough to kick his ass and become the alpha male themselves. Many males never get to be an alpha male (never get laid).

Often it seems like you know guys who are always getting laid and other guys never get laid. You'll even see women talking to or hanging out or being friends with the average guy, but then sleep with some other guy (even if he is a jerk, sleeps around and doesn't respect them). The guy who gets laid is playing the role of the alpha male, while the other guys are submissive males.

I'm saying be the guy who gets laid. That guy is confident that he's going to get laid, because he knows he's an alpha male. He knows that women and people in general want to be with him so he doesn't shy away from conversation and meeting new people. He doesn't worry what others think about him when he's doing his thing. He takes control of a situation with authority. He knows he's fun to be with because he is always having a good time and therefore he is fun to be with. He knows that if he is in a group of guys and a group of girls, he will be the one the girls choose to be with, and by having this to be the expected outcome, it is a self fulfilling prophecy.

Ok here's, how I did the Alpha or Dominant Male thing. First I created a model of what I thought a Dominant Male should be. Much the same as the one stated before. Then I used it to change my frame of reference about myself, ie I stepped into my model of the Dominant Male. I claimed what I knew to be my genetic right. and I didn't care who knew it. I didn't make excuses for it either. I just excepted it as the natural order of things. This is not an outward thing that you do but rather an inward change that radiates outward in everything you do.

Being the alpha male is all about attitude and projecting the image that you are fun to be with and the woman should want to be with you. Being the alpha male is self perpetuating. The more you believe you are the alpha male, the more you become the alpha male.

NightLight9?: As for competing with the muscle boys - that's why I changed my model from seeing myself as the Alpha Male (there can only be one) to a Dominant Male (there can be more than one, but they're all dominant).

The above quotes discuss being the dominant male in a group of other males. The following quotes will explain how to expand that attitude into your interactions with women.

*Jason, Clifford's Seduction newsletter:* There's an attitude to take with super **HB's** (and all women really) that is pure gold. The thought is that INSTINCTUALLY women KNOW their role. The key word here is INSTINCTUALLY. What this means is that on an instinctual level women ARE all the same! They get their juices flowing when they are in the presence of a MAN who is living HIS ROLE. MAN is the dominant one, NOT woman. And deep down inside women KNOW this. This has NOTHING to do with being an asshole. This is about being a MAN who is NOT afraid (which doesn't necessarily only have to mean the usual TARZAN NOT AFRAID! macho stuff, but also not being afraid to be honest, sensitive and caring when the time is right).

You have to be the MAN who has all the sexual power. And when a woman (no matter how hot) sees and feels the presence of a man whom she recognizes as the dominant one while SHE isn't, she does what every woman does - that is SURRENDERS to the more powerful being. And all that acting like she's hot and knows she's the stuff and all those other head up in the air tricks are just a test and a way to weed out all the men who are less powerful than her and don't know their role as a MAN.

## **2.4 Do my look matter?**

Do your looks matter? Of course they do, but not nearly as much as you think and not nearly as much as anyone else thinks. Men fundamentally judge women by their looks: face, hair, eyes, breast, legs, body, etc. and, more than anything else, it is a woman's looks that turns men on (or turns men off). For a (heterosexual) man, a woman's looks are what initially trances him out, whereas women tend to be seduced more by words and actions - unless the man is some kind of male supermodel or superstar in which case women will trance out on him in the same way a man will trance out on *any* beautiful woman.

It is only natural that men think the same rules about looks apply to women as they do men. To a certain extent, yes. A woman, however, places much less importance to how a man looks compared to how he can make her feel. Looks might better help you get the audition but that's all. Techniques like spoken **NLP** patterns, eliciting and mirroring values, **Mr. Smooth**, **kino**, etc. are strategies based on direct derivations of that understanding. Good looks, the right (symmetrical) face, decent body, nice clothes, will provide you an opportunity to audition for a woman much more easily than bad looks but that's all you get - an audition. From that point on it still comes down to how you can make her feel. It's your ability to make women feel warm, happy, and magical deep down inside them that makes them actually want you, not how you look. That doesn't mean, though, that you shouldn't always try to **look and feel your best**. Why handicap yourself?

## **2.5 Nice guys vs. jerks**

The debate of nice guys vs. jerks has been raging for quite a long time. The nature of being a nice guy, however, is commonly misunderstood. It is believed that being polite, considerate, friendly, tender, romantic, etc. is what being a nice guy is all about and thus those qualities should be avoided, as it is the jerk, the rude, the inconsiderate, the impolite, the rough guy who always gets the girl while the nice guy is waiting outside in the pouring rain with flowers in his hand.

It doesn't mean that women prefer rude over polite, inconsiderate over considerate, etc. It all becomes clear when we look at a very important issue often overlooked when trying to define what makes the jerks beat the nice guys when it comes to getting the girls. It is sexuality - the jerks are not afraid to show that they are sexual beings, while the nice guys hide their sexuality as a part of their agenda of being friendly, polite, and courteous towards women.

*Peta, Clifford's Seduction Newsletter:* It dawned on me as it has, that the androgyny is key. Women fall for bastards because they don't turn off the sexuality. nice guys think women will be terrified of their sexuality, so they turn it off and all they get is women responding to their androgyny (sending all nice guys to **LJBF**-land)

## **2.6 Good traits**

According to some **PUAs**, women obviously want a man with these most important traits:

- confidence
- humour
- smile
- well groomed or good looks
- ability to create an emotional connection or a feeling of romance

In addition to that, being a successful **player** includes:

- being patient
- being persistent



- being comfortable just going up and talking to a new woman
- finding opportunities in situations where you before did not believe there would be
- being sensitive to how she feels or responds and modifying your approach accordingly
- knowing how to talk to a woman to build more rapport with her
- knowing how to talk to a woman to make her start thinking in romantic directions

Having mastered all of the above, these will add the final touch:

- mirror her physically
- notice her trance words, remember and use them
- rephrase everything she says and feed it back to her
- anchor all good feelings
- don't argue with her, be very understanding, deeply understanding - this can help create an immense rapport
- use presuppositions to direct her actions
- have and keep good eye contact - also helps to create an immense rapport
- touch her
- and always start with the cutest girl around

**ASF:** Remember, chit chatting about clubs and work school is something she can do with anyone, but someone who can lead her into a state of arousal or at least romantic interest is hard to come by. You have to set yourself apart from the other guys by minimising the small talk and asking questions which can lead her into a romantic state.

## **2.7 It all comes down to satisfaction**

**ASF:** It doesn't matter HOW good she looks she WANTS to cum and YOU can make it happen. You can make her cum anytime you want to and you know this. Let her know it too by the way you look at her That is exactly what the 9-10's out there NEED. They get guys who come too soon, fawn over and smother her. Basically they (the 9-10s) don't get regularly or don't ever get what they REALLY NEED AND DESERVE. Granted it is a little harder work to overcome years of those women's' tiny and non-existent sexual satisfaction, but YOU are the MAN to deliver it.

## **2.8 Women want good sex and romance**

Don Diebel: Women don't want just sex - they want good sex and romance. Women's desires are much greater than most men realise. But, unlike men, who are mostly just after sex, women are looking for great sexual experiences. Women are very discriminating and choosy in picking sexual partners. They are only interested in having a sexual encounter with a partner that sexually arouses them and or promises, by his manner or image or personality, to be good in bed. Women want exciting, provocative, imaginative partners who will lead them through great sexual experiences. Though their sexual desire may be very high, they will pass up just any sexual encounter waiting to find the one that promises to be special. But women know that good sex is hard to find - once they have it, they will not let go easily

So make sure that when you do her, you do her right

## **2.9 Should you express or contain your sexual desires?**

The whole point of seduction is to make the girl want you. really bad So the point of expressing or containing your own desires is moot. If you know how to make her want you (specific strategies are discussed within this guide), you might actually be more likely faced with the situation of trying to contain her sexual desires instead of yours.

If however you are a clueless and horny **AFC**, the following piece of advice is for you :

Don't rush things sexually with single women. Appear as if you are still deciding whether or not you want to be involved. The first example in this section of ending a date before she does, is a great way to accomplish this. Also, if the mood, the time, the place isn't right, or it feels the slightest bit awkward, don't try kissing her for the first time. If she's interested, the time and place will come. But, by pushing it, you risk blowing an important event, you risk coming off as being desperate for action and worst of all, you risk appearing inexperienced and inept. Don't be afraid to wait until the time is right.

A few final words - it takes far less time to become a **PUA** than to wait until the time is right 'Nuff said Now have fun with the rest of this guide

Ok, a few more final words - you are a MAN, you DO have sexual desires, no point in trying to deny that. Which in fact is a good attitude to have I make no excuses for my desires! I am a MAN goddammit! And I only laugh at the hypocrisy of the world! So if some girl wrinkles her nose at this - you'll just convert her and she won't know how she could ever have thought differently from you

But on the whole, as the point of seduction is to make the girls finally want to almost rape you, YOUR sexual desires should never even be a subject of discussion

## **2.10 Wanna play the dating game? Um. let's see.**

Actually, dates should be an exclusive reward and privilege of those girls that you're already sleeping with. But if you still decide to take her on a date before that. don't make it a date, say that you'll just get together. And make sure she pays for her coffee or drink or food. If she refuses, eject her - she was only interested in a chump who would buy her food or drinks. You can however suggest paying for rounds of beer or coffee in turns - for example, you'll pay for the first round, she the second etc.

If you still insist on doing the classic date, here's a bit of advice :

End the date before she does. You've gone to a movie and are now having a bite to eat at a restaurant (make sure she pays for her movie and for her meal; you don't want to be wasting your money until she has expressed her interest in you in a most convincing fashion - has had sex with you). Instead of letting the date drag on to that awkward time when she finally says she has to go home, maintain control of the evening (you should be running patterns here, getting **kino**, making her feel connected to you, getting her horny and wet etc, but this whole dating advice is obviously intended for those lacking the appropriate skills). While the conversation is still good, while the date is still going well, announce that it's getting late and it's time to go. Tell her that you enjoyed the evening (what a lie, your goal wasn't to stuff your stomach and see a movie, your goal was to tongue her down, make her horny like she'd never been and give her the orgasm of her life) and that you are looking forward to getting together again. This is going to surprise her, since every other guy thinks, that by some miracle, if he hangs on long enough that maybe he'll convince her to have sex with him (exactly, because hanging on long enough will accomplish nothing, but you should know better). If a girl wants to have sex with you, she will let you know (and if you've done her right and can read her signs, then she has already given them to you). So if you haven't gotten these vibes, end the date while it's still going well (but in fact if you haven't gotten those vibes in spite of all your advanced seduction attempts, you should have ejected her a long time ago). You'll set yourself apart from the other guys she's used to (no you won't - they didn't get any and neither did you). You demonstrate that you are not easy to get (or you'll demonstrate you're a chump and a wimp like all the other guys).

But honestly, avoid the whole dating thing. There are a zillion other ways to get to know to a girl than going on a date. Do sports together, rent a movie (mmm, have a cup of coffee, whatever, just avoid a date. Get together - YES! Go on a date - NO!

## **2.11 The rules with your wingman**

NYC: I tell all my **wingmen** up front that it's anything goes with the chicks. I am not going to try to take a chick that they are talking to, but if I am getting the vibe, I will give it ample time for my **wing** to reel her back in and get her. After that, it's full steam ahead! I will give him room because he's the one that found the chicks, but if he can't attract her and he's tried his whole bit step aside my man it's my turn Same thing if I am called in as the **wing**. I will fulfil my duty as **wing** as it is explained to me, but if the situation goes dynamic and the wrong chick is into me, your clock is ticking down get her back on course to you or she's mine

Maxim: Danielle, 24, New Orleans: I look to see that his guy friends are not total losers. If they are, then my friends are going to get stuck talking to them. Also, I think some guys purposely hang out with unattractive friends so they look like studs by comparison. It works against them—even if a guy is the best-looking one of the bunch, it just makes me think he's the Head Nerd.

## **3 How to get started**

### **3.1 On confidence and getting started with approaching girls**

**ASF:** Try approaching every **HB** you see and say, Hi. Are you the sort of person I should get to know better? If she says Yes, then ask Why? Put the focus of the conversation on what she has to offer you. Do this in a matter of fact way, like you were saying Hi. Your shoe's untied. In fact, if you can't yet muster the boldness to confront **HB's**, then just tell them it looks like they're about to lose a heel on their shoe and WALK AWAY. Try it. It works. Don't misunderstand the addressing a girl and then walking away works part - it doesn't work for getting to know these girls, it works to add to your experience and feeling natural and good about approaching girls

I didn't use feeling confident here on purpose, because ideally, you don't want to feel confident - being confident is something you think about and which ultimately reveals that you must be nervous in one way or another after all. Ideally you feel so good and natural about it that the word confidence never pops up in your mind Feeling so good and natural that you have no need to think about being confident is actually the ultimate confidence - but never think of it in terms of confidence. Forget the term confidence altogether, just concentrate on feeling good and natural (about approaching, propelling her to new heights of pleasure with your patterns, having **kino** etc) and before you know it - confident is how you'll be perceived by women

When seeing a girl you'd like to approach, don't even try to feel confident. Instead, think: See that girl? I am the perfect experience for her! Think of the way she will have goosbumps from the way you'll make her

feel good, and if you want to, then for just a split-second you can remind yourself of all the ways you could make her cum Don't dwell on that though Just go and offer her the experience of a life-time

### **3.2 Experiment**

You could gobble up all the knowledge in the known universe about seduction but you'll neither never know what works best for you nor build up an intuition or experience concerning what would work best with any given girl - unless you start experimenting, both with what you've learned and what you come up with yourself. Plus this also helps to put you in the right mind-set.

**ASF:** The main thing I put my successes recently down to is the decision I made to have fun and make meeting women a game. Let's push their buttons this way and see how they respond. What will they do if I say this etc. When I meet someone I'm thinking What can I learn from you? What fun can I have relating to you? rather than Wow, you're gorgeous. Oh shit! What do I say? Do I look OK? Will you like me? , which are some of the thoughts that used to run through my mind in my **AFC** days.

### **3.3 Casual meetings vs. pick-ups**

Girls love to meet their prince charming casually, they dream of meeting you accidentally and by chance. That usually includes meeting you at a somewhat more private party (a birthday or a wedding, but not a nightclub), being introduced to you through a mutual friend, having common interests (hobbies, sports etc) and meeting you through events organized for people practicing these interests; school, work, hobbies, friends, and relatives being the common denominators here.

That is also why trying to pick up a girl in the street or on the commuter is so much harder to do than just meeting her casually - it is completely different from what she has been dreaming of and in addition to having to make her like you the way you present yourself, you'll have to compensate for not being able to have the silent recommendation of having mutual friends or hobbies plus dismiss any of her doubts of you doing this (picking up girls) all the time, a thought which might weigh against you even if she actually likes you and your approach.

But whether you want to make the girl like you having met her casually or doing a more direct pick-up, you'll be using the same techniques nevertheless. Opting for a casual meeting just simplifies your task of getting her to like you and has a higher probability of her coming to expect a **LTR** once things get serious (whether you like or want that to happen is already a different subject), whereas pick-ups are tougher to pull off successfully, but they also broaden your choice of girls far beyond those that you happen to meet casually plus each failure and success will build your experience and confidence respectively far more than casual meetings could ever do.

In short, casual meetings are safe, pick-ups more rewarding, and the choice is yours, but a healthy mixture of both is probably the best way to go

### **3.4 At a party**

After you arrive, you can go with the **3s** rule (recommended) or alternatively, Don Diebel: Grab some food or a drink and notice what seems to be going on socially, what the dynamic seems to be, etc. The people who seem lost will be the easiest folk to flirt with. If you want to, you can assume that everyone is socially nervous, cut them some slack if things initially seem awkward and look for ways you can make people more comfortable. But honestly, it's much more fun to storm in with guns blazing using the **3s** rule

### **3.5 Just say Hi!**

This is a really simple strategy. If you're consistent and persistent with this strategy, this could yield you a lot of beautiful women. It'll take a long time though, but then again, it requires almost no effort on your part

Here's what you do. You see a girl you like, but for some reason can't do an approach (you don't have the time, or maybe the guts, or the situation disallows it etc), at least do this - say Hi. Keep enough eye-contact to get a confused Hi in return, then continue with what you were doing (walking, working etc). Maybe you'll never see the girl again. But if you do (oh joy and behold! - say Hi again. Then continue with what you were doing (basically, ignoring her. And so on, and so on. After the first three Hi's the girl is still wondering, if or how she is supposed to know you. After the fifth Hi she is already wondering, how come you never actually talk to her. After the tenth Hi she can't understand, how come you never even approach her. After the twentieth Hi she is so confused and intrigued about you that she just can't stand it anymore and will approach YOU instead. She'll try to find out how the two of you know, and why you never talk to her, or why you never even approach her, but you still keep saying Hi, is there something wrong with her etc - be very vague and mysterious about it in your answers (after all, you don't have much to tell anyway. Now however, you're talking to an absolutely gorgeous girl (remember, you almost didn't even have the guts to say Hi to her, who is so intrigued about you the she approached you - make the best of it

So the good part of this tactic is - almost zero effort on your part, just remember saying Hi to her. The downsides however are numerous - you might never see her again, which is especially bad if she became interested in you when you said your first Hi already. Or you might see her a few more times but not on a consistent enough basis to build up enough intrigue in her. Also, this takes a monstrous amount of time to ripen - months, possibly even years. Neither is it much of a confidence- and experience-builder - you'll develop a confidence of saying Hi to beauties (not much is it? and acquire no experience whatsoever. But it serves its purpose as a last-ditch resort when you see a 10 approaching down the street, hurrying somewhere - say Hi, get one in return, make her think that the two of you know each other somehow (obviously she can't remember you and hope for another chance meeting (when she hopefully still vaguely remembers you).

**A modification of this tactic** (which seems to make some more sense) - just say Hi to any girl you like. Yes, any girl and anywhere - the commuter, the street, the airport, the corridor, the cafeteria. Answer: Some won't answer (maybe you greeted her too late for her to notice you), some answer, some smile and answer, some answer, smile and stop (!) to initiate conversation with you (most probably about how come you know her when she doesn't seem to be able to remember you from anywhere).

The ones that you have exchanged Hi-s with (without ever being introduced to each other or having actually approached her) are the best to use the We already know each other tactic with. The next time you meet, just start in the middle, like with an old friend, comment on something or anything etc, she responds and BOOM - you're acquaintances!

Ok, so that's still a long way from having her naked body between your sheets - but you've made a start and you're already well on your way

### **3.6 Talk to girls everywhere**

If you look and feel great, then you won't have any trouble with this. If you see a girl, looking in the window of a store, waiting for a bus, sitting on a train, in the next aisle of a movie, shopping in a department store, and for any reason this girl appeals to you, strike up a conversation, start talking to her about anything that comes to mind. With more experience - number close or close right there, in the street. So set yourself a goal of talking to girls at the supermarket, laundromat, at a concert, while standing in line at the movie, sitting at the bar, on the bus, standing in the street, in the elevator, just anywhere and everywhere.

Taken from Seep women off their feet: The most important thing for you is to talk to women everywhere, about anything until they no longer intimidate you. When talking to women no longer intimidates you, something special will happen. You will find yourself having non-threatening conversations with beautiful women all the time, and better yet, those conversations will naturally turn into seduction mode even without a conscious effort on your part. And once you stop thinking about seduction, you will find yourself just doing it. You will begin to see the change in women's behaviour towards you.

### **3.7 How to initiate a conversation**

The following comes in handy, if truly NOTHING comes to mind after having applied the 3s rule. It is of course more recommended, that you think this all through before having approached, just try to limit your thinking to. preferably no more than 3 seconds. No, I'm not an evangelist, it's just that the more you wait, the bigger chances there are that she'll leave, someone else will join her for a conversation, you start sweating and eventually chicken out, circumstances change etc. ASF:

1. Ask some kind of OPEN ENDED approach question (it will normally begin with the word 'what').
2. Have at least one other OPEN ENDED follow up question, preferably more than one, to defend you against stalling.
3. By the time you've reached this stage. providing your questions were interesting enough, you are in conversation

Before point 1. above, you are a stranger and the woman is wary of you. At point 2. she's still wary, but talking. By the time you've hit point 3. - and it doesn't matter if it's one woman or a group - she or they have more or less accepted you and seem to drop their barriers a lot. All in a couple of minutes.

To continue. If the HB is a talker, paraphrase her and ask intelligent questions. Then ask some cheeky questions, maybe neg hit and get some of your own stuff in. If she's a listener, you'd better have something ready to talk about (or you're gonna CRASH and BURN) - a tale or two about your interesting and humorous exploits (laced with SS of course) that moves gently from being innocent into being more and more risqué. Throw in negs if you need.



### 3.8 Talking to her = echoing her

Girls want to be understood. In order for her to feel understood, you need to listen to what she says, rephrase it and feed it back to her (it helps if you agree with whatever statement she made. Listen to what she says, remember it and you can make her feel connected to you and understood by you even weeks after your conversation by just simply repeating what she told to you during your conversation So make sure a lot of your communication to her is a subtle echo of what she feeds you. Now this strategy is already quite effective on its own but combine it with using trance-words and she's gonna levitate right in front of your eyes

**ASF:** You need to do more than just agree with her going uh uh won't cut it. However you also can't just repeat what she said verbatim. You have to take something she's said and paraphrase it and present it as an original thought or opinion.

### 3.9 Fluff talk

Fluff talk is an important part of approaching a girl, especially if you plan to launch into patterns, which you can't begin the conversation with on their own. Fluff talk is also needed, if you plan to continue with eliciting values - you must have had at least some sort of a casual conversation with the girl, for then it would sound only natural for you to have become a little more interested in her, to the point of asking all sorts of questions

The number one rule of fluff talk is - direct the conversation towards and talk about FEELINGS. What fluff talk usually ends up being is an exchange of facts - where ya goin?, whatcha doin?, what did you do today or yesterday?, oh that's interesting. Facts are a BORE! Giving you her facts makes her feel NOTHING. Neither has she any use for the facts you are giving her. So grab any opportunity you have to get to feelings!

So what did you do yesterday?

Oh I went skating

You like skating?

Yes

Makes you feel good?

Yeah

I know what you mean

And you go on to describe skating as the most liberating, beautiful, earth-shattering experience (that's what making up patterns on the fly is all about. Or have her describe you her feelings herself, if she is a talker. Voila - you've switched from fluff talk to patterning in a blink of an eye

She feels enthralled. But you don't know how to follow up on that. So let the fluff talk continue.

So em have you eaten anything today?

Yea, some sandwiches in the morning. Why?

Well I was just hoping to pick up on some tips on how to have a delicious breakfast without having to spend too much time making it So you like sandwiches?

Um not really I just don't have time for much anything else

But if you did, let's say you had your own personal cook, what would you like to start your morning with?

Oh, well (salivating, fried eggs and bacon, and a large cup of hot chocolate, and some marmalade (etc, let her describe it to her heart's content

Ah, that would really feel good wouldn't it? Still lazily laying in your bed, to have all that delicious food brought to you on a silver tray - you take a sip of cocoa and can feel the pleasant warmth of it spreading throughout your body, which after a good-night's sleep is more fresh and receptive to the pleasantness of that feeling than usual, and you take a taste of marmalade and can feel it melting in your mouth and the sweetness of it waking you up for yet another wonderful day (etc, now make good use of all the food she HERSELF told you she likes

Once again - fluff talk to pattern talk in no time

So the ability to fluff talk is essential, but not any kind of fluff talk will do. She can exchange facts with a million guys and not feel a thing. Or, she can give her facts to you and get a wonderful return on it But remember - FEELINGS

#### **So, what's your story?**

A less feelings oriented and a more free-flowing approach to fluff-talk. By James L. King III, **ASF:**

So, what's your story? - this is wonderful question that will get the other party talking. It's a good intro, or it can be used right after an opening line.

I've used it several times to great effect, as the line usually gets women talking about how they got to the party, or what they do for a living, or about how they know the host, or why they chose to strip for a living. I learn a lot by paying attention to the subject matter of their answer. If it's about what they do for a living, then you know that's something important to them rapport material handed on a platter. If the woman doesn't mind sharing personal things about herself with you, this opening gives her the perfect opportunity, while at the same time allowing those women who are more reserved a chance to come up with something more benign, like I'm a friend of the host.

If they respond by not answering or looking dazed and confused or by saying that question makes them uncomfortable, I move on to someone else. People like that are no fun anyway, no matter how beautiful they may appear.

Always be prepared to mirror the statements they give you if they reveal something personal about themselves, you can reveal something that's personal to you . perhaps not the same thing, but something similar. This will feed the rapport between you as a relationship begins to develop. (This is also a good time to start your patterning language, if you don't do it naturally and turn it on or off as needed.)

Also, if things aren't progressing so well with one person, remember that mingling means moving around don't stay with one person so long, otherwise you're not mingling. You can always return later.

You can use the story approach not only with the person, but with accessories or special clothing the woman is wearing: examining a beautiful necklace, you can ask so, what's the story behind the necklace?

The story approach doesn't work with un-special clothing: So, what's the story behind those Levi's? doesn't work as well as So, what's the story behind that gorgeous hand-knit scarf?

### **3.10 The don'ts of fluff talk**

(Originated by Don Diebel)

- Do not talk about any of your personal (family, work, money) problems.
- Don't act desperate.
- Don't talk about anything negative at all. Keep everything you talk about upbeat and positive.
- Don't get drunk. This really turns women off and makes a bad impression. Don't drink at all or limit your drinking to a couple of drinks.
- Don't try to analyse her problems.
- Don't bitch about your previous girlfriends or ex-wives on how they mistreated you, dumped you, cheated on you, took you to the cleaners on child support, etc.
- Don't pretend to be funny or humorous. If you are putting on an act, it will come across to her as phoney. Just be friendly and smile (but in appropriate doses, avoid having a grin on your face ALL THE TIME, guys that are smiling for hours in a row look terribly insecure and just plain pathetic).
- Don't focus on your health problems or ailments.
- Don't brag about yourself and your accomplishments. There are exceptions though, but try to be careful about them. If you really have something impressive to talk about, you can let her in on it, just try to be real casual about it. On the whole, women are very good at sniffing out when the male is trying to impress them by bragging. And if what he is bragging about is not really that impressive, it's a complete turn-off. So be careful. Focusing on her and her interests is a far safer route to take.
- And at all costs, avoid these three themes: politics, religion and conspiracy theories. These are guaranteed to nuke your otherwise wonderful interaction.

Maxim: Complaining or saying anything negative is kind of a turn-off. Some guys seem to think if they say that something sucks—the vodka, the music, the crowd—it shows they have an intelligent and critical eye. It just shows me that he's a grump.  
—Wendy, 27, Toronto

### **3.11 Reading body language**

Doesn't matter whether she is interested in you, you'll make her interested eventually anyway But look for these signs to show you whether you're already making progress It's also fun to look for these signs as a by-stander, either in everyday situations or for example in a bar - when the guy earnestly believes he is being soo smooth but the woman he is talking to isn't displaying any of the signs presented below, you can't help but have a chuckle about it

#### **Her lips:**

- Big smiles with upper and lower teeth showing with a relaxed face.
- Biting of the lips or showing of the tongue, licking her lips or touching of her front teeth.
- She wets her lips, some women use only a single-lip lick, wetting the upper or lower lip, while others run the tongue around the entire lip areAnswer:
- She puts her fingernail between her teeth.
- She protrudes her lips and thrust her breasts forward.

#### **Her eyes:**

- She gazes in your eyes with deep interest and her pupils are dilated.
- She raises both eyebrows exaggeratedly for a couple of seconds, this is often combined with a smile and some eye contact.
- She winks at you while talking to you or winks at you from a distance.
- While talking to you, she blinks more than usual, fluttering her eyelashes.
- Eyebrows raised and then lowered, then a smile indicates interest in you.

#### **Her hair:**

- She pushes her fingers through her hair. This can be one hand movement or more of a stroking motion.
- She twirls her hair around her fingers while she is looking at you.
- She is throwing her hair back off her shoulders.

#### **Her clothing:**

- If she is wearing clothes that show her nipples underneath and you notice they are getting perky and erect.
- The hem goes up to expose a little more leg.
- She is fixing, patting or smoothing her outfit to make herself look better.

#### **While she is seated:**

- She moves in time to the music, with her eyes on you.
- She starts sitting straight up and her muscles appear to be firm.
- She is sitting with her legs open.
- She sits with her legs crossed in a manner to reveal her thigh.
- Her legs are rubbing against each other.
- Her legs are rubbing against the leg of the table.
- Her crossed leg is pointed towards you or if that same leg is rocking back and forth towards you.

#### **Her hands:**

- She exposes the palms of her hand facing you.
- While talking to you, she rests an elbow in the palm of one hand, while holding out her other hand, palm up.
- She rubs her wrists up and down.
- She sits with one hand touching one of her breasts.
- She rubs her chin or touches her cheek. This indicates that she's thinking about you and her relating in some way
- She is fondling keys, sliding hands up and down a glass, playing with toys or other things on the table.
- She plays with her jewellery, especially with stroking and pulling motions.
- She touches your arm, shoulder, thigh, or hand while talking to you (in case you already haven't started **kino** yourself, dumbass).
- She is pretending to look at her watch as you pass her.

#### **Her voice**

- She raises or lowers the volume of her voice to match yours.
- She speeds up or slows down her speaking to match yours.
- She laughs in unison with you.
- In a crowd she speaks only to you and focuses all of her undivided attention on you.

#### **Micellaneous:**

- She mirrors your body language and body positions.

- Her skin tone becomes red while being around you.
- She blows smoke straight out from between her lips and toward you.
- She leans over and speaks into her friend's ear, just like in junior high school.
- She is standing with her head cocked slightly at an angle, one foot behind the other, hips slightly thrust forward.
- At a party - every once in a while she seems to appear out of nowhere in your vicinity and if you move to another spot, soon she appears out of nowhere again, you catch her glancing in your general direction (actually, glancing at YOU dummy!, she bumps into you. accidentally, touches you. accidentally etc

**When talking to a girl, these are some of the more important signs to watch for:**

- Can you keep conversation going with her?
- Does she react well to kino?
- Does she touch you?
- Does she laugh?

Now I don't have to explain what the answer yes to these questions means, do I

From Sweep women off their feet: All these signs usually tell you that the girl is captivated by your charms. But before you get there, chances are that her body language changes as the discussion progresses. Make sure that you watch her closely and as soon as you get a sign that should be an indication that you are on the right track, keep going in that direction. If the opposite happens, just change the subject and see what happens.

The really gorgeous and beautiful girls however very seldom get around to displaying the signs of interest described above. They simply don't have to, as they are used to getting some attention already long before that. With such girls you have to be on a lookout for the initial and thus much more subtle signs of interest. One example of this would be a gorgeous girl simply looking at your face. Obviously people tend to look at what or whom they like to look at. But whereas an average girl first just looks at your face and then progresses into the more overt signs of interest described above, looking at your face from time to time might be the only sign of interest you'll ever get from the most beautiful of girls.

So if you think you're not getting any signs of interest from beautiful girls - you are, but you just can't see them well enough yet.

Don Steele: Here are signs of interest sent from across the room. Most are applicable to both sexes. The sequence of the list approximates the courtship sequence.

In Summary. Frequency of eye contact, the more the better. Amount of time she, or he, holds your gaze, the longer the better. How she breaks off eye contact, down before away is great! Shine of the eyes, the brighter the better. Direction of body, toward you, good, away, bad. Overall posture, erect and alert are good. Tilt of head, vertical is bad, increased tilt is great. Where the drink is held, high in front as a barrier, that's bad. Hand activity, clenched, squeezing or pinching is bad, open, caressing or stroking is great.

Most of us are slightly afraid as well as somewhat excited in settings where social interaction is expected and required. So, most people do not sit or stand in an open posture. But, during courtship, the more open the other person's posture is, the more open that person is to you and your advances. And, the more open you are, the more likely the other person is to open up to you. First Conversation Signals. Men, pay attention to all the ways she communicates during the first few minutes as you talk with her.

In social settings, most of us start out in a closed, defensive posture because we're a bit apprehensive. A closed posture feels safe. When the person you are talking with shifts to a more open posture, it signifies trust and comfort. That person is, literally, opening up to you and what you have to offer.

It takes courage to open up to the other person. If you go first, she, or he, will usually follow your move from closed to slightly more open. Open up in, slow, gradual shifts of posture.

### **3.12 Mirroring**

A variation of mirroring is discussed in the articles dealing with eliciting values and using trance-words - that is verbal mirroring. But a better-known variation of mirroring is physical mirroring. Actually, you've most probably been doing it all your life without knowing it but once you know how to harness the power of mirroring consciously - it's like young Skywalker recognising and harnessing the power of the Force.

Notice how people that seem to be engaged in an interesting conversation - they are excited about what they themselves are saying, they are about to say and what the other is saying, in other words, they have rapport - seem to take the same poses, whether sitting or standing up. When sitting, either side by side or on opposite sides of the table - one leans forward and then the other leans forward as well, one leans



backward and then the other leans backward as well, they cross their hands in the same manner, tilt their heads similarly, seem to be having similar side-activities (one playing with his keychain, the other with her pen), etc etc. Are they directing their actions consciously? No, all their energies and concentration is on the discussion, everything else happens subconsciously. But actually, they don't even have to be having a discussion, they may just both be thinking their own thoughts. and still you can see mirroring going on - they make the same movements almost the same time without seemingly without having any perceivable interaction with the other person.

What is all this knowledge good for? Well, mirroring can be used as a tool for building rapport. Being similar or having someone similar in your vicinity creates a feeling of ease, comfort, being understood, protected (should there appear a threat of any sort, there's two of you now etc. So you can use the power of mirroring to create these feelings in the one you are mirroring, she'll subconsciously link all those feelings to you (after all, you are the one mirroring her and rapport is going to develop between you without you having lifted a finger (unless she lifted a finger and you had to mirror her.

How, whom and from where should I mirror? Whom - that's easy, the girl you want of course How - assuming the same posture, doing the same movements with your hands, in all respects using your body in a similar fashion to hers. More aspects of mirroring are:

- following - doing the movements after she did them. Note that although your mind screams This is stupid! I'm going to get caught! She MUST see me doing the same movements! This is ridiculous!, don't listen to it, fight it, it is the voice of the Dark Side! Why? Because they NEVER NOTICE it! Instead, they feel more comfortable and relaxed in connection with you, and eventually (that's why you even bothered, right? - more drawn to you.
- pacing - doing the movements the same time with her. Yes. Sounds impossible? Well it isn't. Have you ever noticed how you sometimes happened to do the same things at exactly the same time with another person. Maybe yawn and then have a laugh about it? Because you thought it was accidental? Well it wasn't, you had reached the second stage of mirroring (Yawning is not a good example though, the last thing you want is the girl yawning with you. But there's nothing magical all supernatural about doing the movements at the same time, because essentially the second phase is a stage of transition between the first and the third. In mirroring there's always a leader and a follower. So far she has been leading you (because you've been following her) but now you are coming to the stage when YOU will be leading her! And the inevitable stage between following and leading is pacing - you are doing movements simultaneously.
- leading - if you've done your mirroring right, have followed and paced, then you are ready for a revelation. You can lead! Try it. Cough. She coughs. Scratch your elbow. Well maybe she'll scratch her shoulder instead of her elbow, big deal In addition to being a tool of building rapport, you can lead her into doing some pretty fun stuff. Do a movement with your hands mimicking the parting of legs (this should be associated with something you are talking about, if it looks strange, she'll notice it and you don't want her conscious attention on your movements, keep her mind busy with what you're talking about). Watch her legs part Have fun

Another more advanced aspect, although controversial as to the effectiveness of it, is mirroring her blinking her eyes and breathing. Being able to mirror her breathing and blinking her eyes is supposed to create an even deeper rapport, but first of all - trying to see when she breathes might seem like you staring at her breasts (and you would NEVER do that, would you?; and secondly - all the concentration required to detect and match your breathing and blinking with hers will take away much-needed attention from what she is saying, how is she responding to your patterns, values, **kino** etc, so eventually this could do more harm than good.

As to from where to mirror - the most common situation is when you're talking to her. But you can also try mirroring from a distance, say in a classroom, meeting, night-club or cafeteria, just make sure she has a chance to subconsciously detect you mirroring her, in other words, she must be able to see you (so you can forget about mirroring her while watching her take a shower through a peep-hole.

A technique of creating instant rapport by faking body-language. Tom, **ASF**: I just finished another book about body language, and they mention several times that when someone is interested in a discussion, they tilt their head slightly. I thought that now that I knew when someone was interested, maybe I could do the same to simulate my deep interest in what they say. And it works! When someone's like and you know, my dog just got a new collar and it fits wonderfully with the living room furniture; the shade of green is just the same as the kid's bedroom carpet and that's great because - usually you would be using a few words they said (dog, collar, etc) and using the same adjectives (wonderful, great, etc) and ask something making them continue. But when you tilt your head slightly and do the same thing, it's obvious the impact is much stronger.

Maxim: I love it when a guy sort of mirrors my physical behavior, like when I'm sitting across from him and I lean in to say something, I like him to lean in. If I'm talking really fast, and he can keep up with me, it makes me feel like we're in the same place. If I'm being a little frenetic and he's slow and relaxed and laid-back, I feel really far away.

—Carlie, 30, Salt Lake City

### 3.13 Kinesthetics (aka kino) - have kino with your female friends or acquaintances

Psychological studies show that casual touching during a friendly conversation causes people to remember the conversation more fondly after the fact.

The combination of **kino** with **social proof** is dynamite. Touch one girl and the other girls seeing this think it's normal or even good to be touchy-feely with you. Now you can quite naturally move on to touching those other girls and so forth.

**ASF:** It's quite simple - hug them, touch their hand sporadically and in A NON THREATENING WAY, that is, not like the desperate pervert we all are. So the idea is, you hide completely the interest you might have AND at the same time you act really touchy or huggish. The problem is - you have to start this early in the friend relationship, it has to seem natural, or otherwise she'll wonder what the fuck is he doing lately? Once you've developed that kind of flirtatious friendship, it's easy to spawn other such 'friendships' with other women: they will see you being close to another woman, and I think the key here is that, it probably does not trigger as much jealousy as it makes them (the new ones) feel comfortable - they see another woman being touched by you in a non-threatening way, and, blam, social-proof, it becomes a 'proof' to them that it's normal for you to touch them in turn.

**ASF:** Ok, I use this all the time now. TOUCH HER! It doesn't matter if you just met her. Hold her hand, rub her arm, her elbow her back, her shoulders, her hair, her face. TOUCH HER !

**ASF:**

1. PAY ATTENTION TO HOW SHE RESPONDS TO YOU!
2. PAY ATTENTION TO HOW SHE RESPONDS TO YOU!
3. One more time: PAY ATTENTION TO HOW SHE RESPONDS TO YOU ! If you do this you will be able to better gauge if you have the appropriate rapport to invite a kiss. If her body seems to respond to the non-sexual touching then get gradually more sexual. For women some areas of the body outside of the primary erogenous zones are intimate: Palms, inside the elbow, ear lobes, cheeks, the hips where the waist meets the hips, between the fingers.
4. Last thing: PAY ATTENTION TO HOW SHE RESPONDS TO YOU!

**Do the things that lovers do** - brush off something that's stuck in her hair, gently stroke her cheek pretending to wipe off an eyelash etc. These are the types of things lovers do and by doing them, you will make her feel (doesn't even matter if only subconsciously) like you were her lover. Plus you'll get innocent yet pleasurable **kino**.

**Kino as soon as you meet a girl.** Meeting someone for the first time is an excellent chance for starting **kino** - shaking hands when exchanging names is a tradition of many cultures and cultures. But make sure you hold on to her hand longer than expected, long enough for you to enjoy it and her to notice, if not you enjoying it but at least you not letting go as quickly as people usually do.

When meeting girls you already know, shaking hands might seem strange, so giving some sort of a hug is the way to go. You don't need to fall all over her to give her a hug (which depending on the situation might even make you look like a fool or a pervert or make her embarrassed instead of having her enjoy it too, a hug can also be putting your arm around her waist or shoulders when standing to her left or right and pulling her closer for a moment, or taking her hand for a moment (but not shaking it), or her elbow, or arm etc. Daniel, **ASF:** **KINO** on the arm or hand as soon as you say hi to show her you are a sexual being.

**Set the mood of the date from the start.** When going on a date or get-together, establish the mood immediately. You can of course change the mood from polite and calm to warm and friendly to aroused and sweaty during the course of the meeting, but why go the hard way, if you can jump right into warm and friendly or beyond in the first place. It is best to have acting enthusiastic upon meeting the girl to have agreed upon previously (most probably when you set up a meeting on the phone, see [Refining the close](#) in Closing for more information). But even without that, you can be all smiles when you meet her, give her a big hug right away, try to take and hold her hand all the way to wherever it is that you'll be going and watch her change from slightly nervous to happy, smiling, starry-eyed and glowing all over. And remember - enthusiasm is contagious.

**Foot-flirting.** You've all seen it done in the movies. The foot loses the shoe and the woman is stroking the man with her bare foot or vice versa. Answer: Corny you say? A cliché maybe? Try it and then see what you think. **ASF:** (in response to you can't **kino** sitting across the table) Actually, you can **kino** when you are sitting across from the **target**. Just use your feet! Of course this requires a small table, but this also helps to set up an intimate atmosphere (remember candles etc.). Touch her feet occasionally with your own under the table, say something like tee hee, you are foot-flirtin' with me? in a joking way. Look her deeply in the

eyes while doing this, and continue using your feet. Do it the right way and at the right time with a chick in the right mood, and voila! You can actually proceed to rubbing each other's crotches with your toes under the table, then say my bed is that way and BANG! You're IN!

**Can't hear you.** LordGaeden, **ASF**: Try this: If she says something, lean forward as if you aren't hearing her very well, and touch her (arm or back). Then lean back again and answer. Are there any easy clues as to when is the right time to go **kino**? The clue is when it's possible (ie, she's within in range).

**Kino is the difference between getting and not getting the girl.** It is the saving grace of even the otherwise doomed nice guy approach. And in some instances, being the nice guy together with using **kino** can even be quite effective. Here's why: the success of **kino** depends on whether the girl perceives you and your touch as a threat to her or not. You can be a rough and tough guy (I try to avoid the word jerk as it is not really quite representative of what the opposite of nice guy actually is) and still have the girl feel you are not a threat to her specifically, thus initiating **kino** will be easy. A nice guy usually just has an easier time having girls feel he is not a threat to them. Usually though, that is also his undoing, as he is consequently perceived as weak, neutral and non-sexual, all of which are major turn-offs for girls. But here is where the saving grace of **kino** steps in. You are safe, so touching and hugging with you is well, also safe. However, before she knows it - touching and hugging with you moves from feeling pretty good to quite exciting to really electrifying until all that good, safe and friendly physical contact with you is going to make her wonder: If it feels so good just to touch with him, why on earth not do more? I wonder what that would be like?. Which is not to say that being the nice guy is the way to go. This was simply meant to illustrate the strength of kinesthetics - it even works for the nice guy So remember - **kino** really is the difference between getting and not getting the girl.

**The protective gesture.** Maxim: In a crowded bar, if people are walking by and pushing you, there's a way a guy can put his arm around you—not actually touching you, but behind your back so he's sort of keeping you from getting shoved. A man doesn't need to pick a fight with some guy who accidentally steps on my toes, but it's nice if he's protective. —Kris, 27, Los Angeles

## **4 Approaching women and getting them interested**

### **4.1 Where to meet girls**

**Shopping Malls.** Try to remember the last time you went to a mall. Can you possibly look in a direction and not spot a beautiful girl that you would like to seduce? I'd venture a guess and say no.

The malls are always full of girls. Girls who work at various stores and shops within the mall, but also a lot of girls who go shopping or just hang out. Girls love shopping. Though it is harder to seduce a girl if she is surrounded by her friends, it is not always the case.

Walk up and down the halls and look inside stores for beautiful clerks or shoppers. If it is a women's clothing store or something feminine, even better. You can easily walk up to a girl (clerk or shopper) and ask her:

Excuse me. Would you be so kind to hold this up in front of you for a moment? It's my sister's birthday next week and you are about the same size as her and from what I can tell you have the same excellent fashion sense.

Better yet, after the initial approach you can even ask her if she sees anything else that she really likes in the store that your sister might like too because of the similar tastes in fashion. Probe for keywords why she likes certain things over the others etc.

Once you have sufficient information of not only what she likes but also why she likes it you can start your charm. Expand the conversation to likes and dislikes in other areas of her life to get her view on things and so on. If she's a shopper you might want to act very quickly to finding ways for you to continue your conversation somewhere else, but if she works there she won't mind spending the time with you especially if it's not very busy.

**Libraries.** If there is one place that girls almost always outnumber guys, it has to be the library. Whether it's a public library or a college or university library, you will always find young girls trying to do research for a project or homework.

These girls are usually very intelligent and dedicated to their work, but the plain truth is the fact that everybody can use a break once in a while. If you provide a bit of a pleasant distraction they'll be more than happy to talk to you. You could be asking them for some help to locate a specific section or specialty book. Even if they can't help you out they will at least have to tell you that they don't know where you can find your book. But guess what? That is a conversation taking place right there. Ask them about their own work, interests, etc. Show interest, and let them talk about it for a while.

These girls like to show off their knowledge so they'll tell you more than you need to know about the subject. But if you develop good rapport at this stage you can easily continue this fascinating conversation elsewhere. Get my drift? You can start asking why they're interested in this particular subject, what's the

most fascinating thing about it, what are the challenges and so on. Once you move to answering this type of questions then you will be able to get an insight as to what type of girl she is, what she holds dear and so on.

**Gourmet Coffee Shops.** Before work, at lunch and after work these places are packed with girls. Sometimes the more packed the place, the better because you may have to share a table with someone. If it's not very busy you can still ask to sit next to a beautiful girl. Just tell her that you don't like to sit alone and if she'd mind you sitting with her till you're done with your drink.

If you're sitting together might as well talk about something. And remember this is a gourmet coffee shop. These girls don't come here for the coffee, they come here for the specialty coffee, and they come for the frills and sometimes even the prestige associated with a particular specialty coffee shop.

So what do you talk about?

Her favorite drink and why she likes it over regular coffee, how does it make her feel and so on. Try and talk in detail about the different sensations and aromas. Women love descriptive talk in detail especially if it involves something that can even be compared to a sexual sensation.

The whipped cream, the cherry on top, how the blend of the coffee with the different liqueurs reminds you of a hot and steamy Latin love dance stimulating your taste buds beyond comparison etc. I guess while you are at the library you can pick up some books on gourmet foods and specialty drinks to learn the language fine critics use to describe them. Believe me, talking like that can make a girl melt even though you're only talking about a specialty coffee, because you end up planting all these wonderful images in her mind by using metaphors.

**Workplace or School or College.** This is a more relaxed atmosphere for seducing women because you are not under time constraints. If you can't get her hotter than hot for you today, you can talk to her again tomorrow. You'll have much better opportunities to get to know her. In addition, if you work or study closely together for an extended period of time chances are that you will become attracted to each other anyway.

**Personals.** (A word of warning about personals - they will never get you the experience of actually approaching and getting the attention of the woman you want because a meeting arranged through personals simply skips this important phase. So although meeting women this way might feel easier initially, ultimately you will never learn the skills that really make the difference)

Is this too low for you? Is it beneath you? Hell no. Whether it's newspaper personals, telephone personals, video personals or Internet personals and chat rooms, they offer you excellent opportunities to meet a lot of women to practice your skills.

With the exception of video personals the drawback is the fact that you don't really know what the person looks like. But that's not a problem. It shouldn't be your goal to meet someone to seduce right away. This is nothing but an avenue for you to get practice and experience talking to women. But if things click for you why not go for it anyway? If she turns out to be butt ugly just tell her that as shallow as this seems, without the physical attraction things aren't going to go anywhere between you two and move on.

Now when placing these personals you can attract a whole lot of women with some catchy headline and be bothered with a lot of replies that get you nowhere wasting your time. Or you can be very specific and discriminating about who you are what you look like and what you're looking for. Feel free to include any characteristics they may find unappealing. This will eliminate a lot of women who might otherwise reply but the ones who do reply are more likely to end up somewhere because they already know what to expect from you and are willing to accept it.

Better yet, read a lot of the women's personals and try to model yours after them.

As an added dirty trick, you can place a personal as a woman seeking a man to get a lot of good ideas from other men who reply to it. Most of them will be really bad but once in a while there will be one that will catch your eye and curiosity. When you reply to a woman's personal ad try out these other ideas to see if they work. If they work, you learned something new. If they don't work, move on.

**An example** of a personals ad. **ASF:**

Isn't attraction incredible? Imagine relaxing into strong arms holding you, feeling safe and appreciated and intimate, knowing you're exactly where you belong I'm educated, successful, emotionally mature, and I know what I want. My work keeps me busy, but I make time for travel, dining out, music (very diverse tastes), and anything new and interesting. I'm tall, in great shape, with green eyes and dark wavy hair (picture available). Looking to meet a woman who's smart, honest, and loves to laugh. Now tell me all about you

A few more US-specific places and times to meet women. Speed Seduction newsletter, Ross Jeffries:

**Restaurants with attached bars:** These places are often great Tuesday to Thursday nights, around 6 - 8:30 PM. Especially upscale places, they cater to a professional crowd. Some VERY nice looking women looking to unwind after work. Also often these places serve as a meeting ground for women having bachelorette parties.

**Coffee houses:** like Starbucks, Coffee Bean, Tea Leaf etc. Great from 8 - 10:30 AM every day of the week. After 9 AM you are more likely to get women who work in retail, outside sales like pharmaceutical reps, self-employed, students etc.

**Supermarkets:** M - F noon to around 1:30 PM as women on their lunch hours pop into buy things. Monday to Thursday 6 - 8:30 PM, Saturdays 10 AM to noon, same for Sundays.



**Shopping malls:** This is a no brainer. If they have a good food court and are near offices, then noon til 1:30 PM, M - F. Hit the food courts and forget most of the rest of the stores. Other good times: Tues - Thurs 6:30 - 8 PM and Sat afternoons.

**Self-improvement seminars:** Such seminars are LOADED to the gunwales with good-looking, SUGGESTIBLE women who are totally open to the type of themes discussed in any good Speed Seduction pattern. Same with most of the self-help gurus. Christ, ya don't even have to sign up. Just find out where they are being held, hang out in the lobby of the hotel and swoop in on the HB's during the coffee, pea and dinner breaks.

**Gyms:** The women are in awesome shape and usually quite adventurous.

**Yoga Classes:** Unbelievable amounts of hard-bodied, wildy well-shaped women. Take a beginners class if you've never done it before and you'll met lots of women, who are also VERY suggestible and open to new ways of thinking.

Johnny Shack:

**Sporting clubs and associations:** These areas are very good for meeting single women. You find out easily which women are single and you can talk with them easily because you have a similar interest. What could be easier? There is immediate conversation to talk about and its enough to get to know each other enough to work out: Am I attracted to this person or not?

Now the footy club (Australian football?) is maybe not the best place for hunting women but a netball club that has mixed competitions definitely is. Gymnasiums are good to. Women at gyms will talk to any guy that talks to them. Everything is on your side in these places because the woman knows you are in the same club and therefore will not automatically be rude to you. Also it gives them a harmless excuse to talk with you without people thinking any sleaziness is going on. They may be waiting for you to say something.

#### **4.2 If she seems unapproachable**

By Johnny Shack

Often the single woman is very lonely. Not many guys ask particular women on dates and when they are asked they will take advantage of it even if you are not her automatic knight in shining armour. You have to understand that even though many women receive attention constantly, they do not actually get asked out on dates. This can be for many reasons and the initial one to come to mind is that all of the guys thought she would say no. They may think she is too good for them and she may not come accross as the approachable type.

Have you ever met someone and they ended up being a lot nicer than what your impression of them was? People carry around themselves an aura of leave me alone or I'll bite your head off type barrier. You only have to break this shield and you are half-way there to getting the woman you desire. Within seconds of asking a woman on a date she can actually change her opinion of you. This is luckily favouring you. She is suddenly thinking of you as a possible mate whereas before you were just another guy to her. The planting of the interest from you into the woman's brain is an extremely important move in catching the women you want. She is now thinking about you in this way. Have you ever had a woman show interest in you and then suddenly you like her more than you did before? Well now you are adding up the minuses and plusses to getting further involved with this woman. You must put yourself into their thoughts to give yourself a chance!

Many girls want to have dates arranged so your approach is welcomed and sometimes even wished for. Maybe all of her friends are in relationships and she doesn't have a lot of choices with whom to go out with.

Or have you ever thought the woman you are thinking about asking on a date really wants you badly? She only needs to be slightly attracted to you and you will get her on a date by asking with confidence and not taking no for an answer. This is even if she plays hard to get. She may even mean no to start with and some gentle persuasion will talk her into it.

More reasons to not perceive her as unapproachable by Johnny Shack:

Its romantic for a woman being asked on a date. They love romance!

Women want a mate and you may be the one they are after. Most women will try different models before they settle down to have babies and you should be in the showroom at least offering a test drive.

All girls dream of their wedding day and the last thing they want is to be left on the shelf. They are searching as hard as you are guys!

Women want someone to kiss and to hold. Someone to have coffee with and to go to the pictures or to see a show with. They feel horrible if they don't have anyone. Many women think: If only a decent guy would come along. Thats all I ask for. Some even cry themselves to sleep wishing to meet this guy and to at least have the opportunity to sort through their dates to find one. They know that without dating this can't happen.

Also, there is something very exciting about going out with a stranger that you just met. It's an air of anything could happen that strongly helps to alter a girls mood and make her susceptible to doing things she normally wouldn't.

They want a guy to replace their father. Think of it guys: many men want the woman they catch to somehow replace that motherly love you left behind when you moved away from home. Women want

someone to share their emotions with in confidence. Many women don't trust their friends probably because they are just as cunning as themselves. So they look to the arms of a man for this.

#### **4.3 General guidelines on approaching**

**Use humour to get you started** - or even give you a head-start Ross Jeffries: Let's talk about using humour for a minute. Not only do most women LOVE a guy who can make them laugh; laughing shifts a woman's physiology and mental focus, interrupting her thought patterns and creating a temporary blank, which YOU can then fill in. Just think about it a second. Have you ever been in a rotten mood, and then a friend suddenly makes you laugh? What happens? You start feeling a hell of a lot better, don't you? What Ross Jeffries suggests as an almost perfect approach is using a humorous comment to get her to laugh, then all you have to do is to follow up with anything to keep the conversation flowing towards a possibly pattern-like talk, eliciting values or any other technique described in this guide you have chosen to use.

You can even border on slightly negging her, if you go Mystery-style with a drop-dead gorgeous girl, or smutty, if you go GM-style, but those two are already more advanced techniques. If however you are dealing with a nice and cute (of 7 or 8 on a scale of 10), you can also make her feel good by complimenting her looks for starters (see [Negging](#) for why this is not such a good idea with a drop-dead gorgeous model-type babe of 10).

Speed Seduction newsletter, Ross Jeffries: For me, one of my favorite ways to meet women is to use some type of humorous approach that gets her laughing. Why is this so important?

1. Laughter sets a woman at ease and puts her off guard.
2. Getting her laughing shows that you are confident and don't take the process of meeting her too seriously, unlike a desperate hard-up loser HAS to succeed, YOU are a fun guy, enjoying your exciting life and creating an opportunity for HER to step into it and have some fun too? IF she plays her cards right.
3. Humor is a way to test to see if SHE has a personality. If she is a mean, unhappy be-yatch, why bother?
4. MOST IMPORTANTLY, LAUGHTER GIVES YOU A BEHAVIORAL RESPONSE from her that you can mention, incorporate, and future pace into HER IMAGINING CONTINUING TO HAVE FUN WITH YOU LATER!

**Offer entertainment and confidence with speed.** ASF: As far as you are concerned the girl has to be entertained by you. If she sees other guys as being more confident and more entertaining she most certainly will excuse herself to the bathroom or the bar to hook up with them later. That's why it's important to work quickly so that you do not take more time than is necessary to secure a chick (take her home or spend some quality KINO time with her on the couch or dancefloor somewhere). Getting numbers on their own is unreliable.

#### **The 3 steps of approaching. ASF:**

**BEGINNING** - preparation clothing, props, initiate an entertaining and interactive conversation (that is what an OPENER is all about).

**MIDDLE** - using entertaining stories and routines, you convey the humour, confidence and the other typical attractive traits, use NEGS to make them chase you, test them (stop conversation to see if they reinitiate it) and look for the indicators to see if closing is worth doing (like KINO, position and body language, laughter, etc), usually 3 positive indicators.

**END** - close or eject based on the indicators. Closing will stall when you don't realise that you will succeed with the close if you have witnessed 3 positive indicators. Decide on either the close or the number close. If pressed for time, just number close but try to kiss her goodbye on the LIPS if you have a little time, always KISS CLOSE.

#### **4.4 Demonstrate value and personality**

You have nothing, absolutely nothing to expect from a girl to whom you do not demonstrate value and personality. Be it being Mr Smooth or making her horny with GM or leading her imagination with patterning or simply being you in a great mood, confident and witty which she finds attractive - you have to demonstrate her something about you that she discovers to be of value for her. And she will discover it being of value for her for the simple reason of liking the way that value makes her feel.

So many guys think, that their mere presence and company is of some specific value to the girl - well it is not. If you sport a great face and/or big muscles, then your presence can sometimes be a turn-on for a girl - she likes the way the proximity of your face and muscles make her feel and thus your presence can be of separate value for her. But even the few times that happens, it will wear off fast if it turns out that that is all you have to offer.

Any time the girl is bored, disinterested, turns you down, walks away, rejects you or ignores you - you have simply not demonstrated enough value to her. Demonstrating the right kind of value and personality, the kind that she is especially looking for in a partner is not an issue at this point, you'll get to that when [Eliciting values](#). Right now you simply need to get her attention by taking an educated guess at what she might be interested in - see [Good traits to have and develop](#). Demonstrating any kind of value and personality from that list of traits will do perfectly fine for starters, and is infinitely better than the Here I am, this is the way I look (and I'm sorry I'm not better-looking), now please like me attitude used by most guys (who are also trying to be funny and confident etc, but eventually their AFC'ness will inevitably shine through. Which will leave them scratching their heads while the girl walks away and thinking oh, better luck next time, I'm sure someone somewhere will like me I hope.

In fact, you are like a travelling salesman, giving girls only a foretaste of the goods and offering them an opportunity to get the real stuff if they behave well enough. See the difference with AFC thinking? Which seems to consider that the girls are the goods which you might eventually get if you date, pay for dinners or movies and take their disrespect long enough? No, YOU are the goods, but you're not selling to everyone - you offer only to a select group of potential customers. But you don't need to push it, the stuff is for real and you know it, and if one customer doesn't want it, it's her loss, another one will grab you gladly.

Just don't forget - nobody will want your goods if they don't even know anything about it. So sample it - by demonstrating value and personality.

#### **4.5 The importance of a first impression**

In general, a woman makes a decision about whether or not she would like to sleep with a man very early during a first encounter. That is why acting like a desperate and horny or a simply nice and wimpy AFC yields you nothing. Ever. Including later. And if a woman has decided that she is not interested in sleeping with you, no amount of pursuit or persuasion is going to move her. Many men have wasted their precious time and energy by ignoring the reality of having fallen into the LJB zone.

All in all, there is nothing you can do to change her mind. Unless you change yourself. Should you be able to leave your old AFC habits behind and become a man, she won't be able to hold on to her old beliefs about you. Now that you're different and can make her feel different, present yourself to her anew and watch the fireworks.

This however does not revoke the importance of a first impression. Women are used to making up their minds (about you-know-what according to their first impressions so changing their minds about it will be somewhat of a paradigm shift. You can make it happen, but with a considerably more effort on your part than if you had left the right impression on her the first time around (which she would have returned by leaving the right kind of impressions on you - her claw-marks on your back).

In conclusion, if you're an AFC - she will either like you or not, and there's nothing you can do about it. If you're a PUA, your options are much more varied - maybe she just didn't like the approach you used, no problem, try another one, or maybe you simply weren't at your best, next time you meet, she has a chance to reevaluate her position.

#### **4.6 Pace and lead**

An example of verbal pacing and demonstrating understanding to increase rapport (see [Mirroring](#) for an explanation and examples of physical pacing). Speed Seduction newsletter, Ross Jeffries:

VERBALLY PACE THE ONGOING SITUATION - I cannot emphasize enough the power of this VERY important rule. Basically, what it means is to verbally describe and therefore ACKNOWLEDGE the situation and reality that she finds herself in with you.

An example:

Let's say you're a lucky s.o.b., and, like me, you live right by a jog or bike path. Women are constantly skating, blading, running or biking right by you. And let's say further, that, you, like me, are a lazy son of a bitch and have no intention of moving your own fat ass via bike, blades, running etc. What do you have to do in order to meet and talk to these women? Well, Buckwheat, what ya first and foremost gotta do is Ya Gotta Get 'Em To Stop!

With that in mind, I have actually USED the following approach and ACTUALLY gotten it to work! I merely wait for a nice looking young lady to come jogging, blading or biking toward my stationary position along the path. I then jump out, hold out a hand and in my most authoritative tone yell: STOP! (This is actually pretty funny to watch. I have never had them NOT stop!)

I then say something like, If you're that easily stopped you need a boyfriend who will MOTIVATE you! My name is Ross.

In the example above, where I've just jumped in her path and yelled STOP, what do you think this girl is thinking? It's a safe bet it is something along the lines of this guy is fuckin' nuts! So I better USE that instead of ignoring it.

I say something along these lines, Look, I know this is a totally nutty way to meet someone (pacing her ongoing belief) but I knew if I didn't do SOMETHING to stop you, we'd never get a chance to talk (also completely true a truism with which she cannot argue) and maybe see how much WE COULD REALLY LIKE EACH OTHER (embedded suggestion).

The principle here is VERY important. And that is BY DEMONSTRATING UNDERSTANDING, YOU INCREASE RAPPORT!

Now, let me make something critically clear: I did NOT say demonstrate that YOU are understanding, sensitive etc. I said demonstrate understanding of her ongoing reality and situation. Not in the sense of apologizing or excusing but simply that you are alert and AWARE of who she is and what she is experiencing.

From here, what I will do is say, Look! don't have a lot of time here (a bit of a takeaway which always makes you more appealing). And it's obvious that you are on the move too. But if you'll sit with me for 5 minutes, I'll analyze your handwriting. You'll get to learn secrets about yourself your best friends don't know and I'll get to find out if YOU are the kind of person I want to know better (here I'm structuring an opportunity and offering her a challenge).

## **4.7 Approaches**

### **4.7.1 Simple approaches**

**An example of a simple 2-on-2 approach (ASF):** Hi my friend isn't from here (introduce friend) so how do you guys know each other? You can also use this to approach a larger group. So how does everyone know everyone else? Yeah, that line is great especially when the truth comes out and the guy that THOUGHT he was here on a date finds out he's only HANGING OUT with the girl he wants and she declares herself free for your picking

**An example of a pattern-like approach (ASF):** I'm sure that you, like me, have had some really interesting experiences in your life. You know experiences that were incredibly fascinating and absorbing, like maybe when you were a kid and you went to a museum and you just got lost in wonder and delight at what you were seeing. If you were to share a memory about one of your most interesting experiences, a person you met perhaps, or a place you've been, or something you've learned that still holds a deep interest for you, what would it be?

**Another pattern-like approach.** Odious, ASF: Excuse me (to get her to stop) I just wanted to say thank you.

Her curiosity bells just went DING. She'll almost inevitably ask why, though it is ok if she doesn't. Move into standard mirroring and rapport building techniques as you continue

Have you ever had one of those days where, you find yourself feeling sort of aloof you're not really happy, but not really sad either you just feel like your adrift. Then suddenly you find you bump into somebody with an incredibly warm and beautiful smile that just makes you feel wonderful for the rest of the day?

She will almost surely smile more at this point, or give some degree of positive response.

So, I just had to thank you for brightening up my day Though, you know it would be a shame if this is the last time I'll see that wonderful smile what's your name?

**An example of approaching girls in cafeterias with some aspects of patterning. ASF:**

- Walk up from a direction where they can see you coming (I like them to feel like I walked up to them confidently, not like I'm trying to sneak up on them or trick them).
- Sit down while you say something with a big smile and like you've known them your whole life. It doesn't much matter what you say, but if you say something interesting it makes it easier to continue the conversation (now they have had a state change and are wondering if they know you).
- Make interesting conversation (use patterns if you know them) while mirroring them. Tell them a little bit about yourself then SMOOTHLY number close.

**M:** So, How was your day (sit down)

**H:** Good how was yours (This is a very typical response if you were smooth with the intro).

**M:** My day was awesome so far (try to match her outlook, if she looks completely down try pretty good). I had a great day at work, and then one of my closest friends that I hadn't talked to in a while called me. You know how you can just talk to someone and no how long it's been you just feel this great connection with them

**H:** That's cool, I have a friend like that

**M:** Someone you can really trust, who always makes you feel good to talk to?

**H:** Yeah, I've known her forever

**M:** I have to go, but I've really enjoyed this conversation, why don't you give me your number and we can talk again



**How was your day, pacing and rapport building.** Anubis, **ASF**: If there's nothing particularly interesting about the environment in which you find yourselves, the first sentence or two gives you the perfect opportunity to pace her (this is more what I'd be tempted to do at a party or some social gathering).

Example 1

You walk across to her and, genuinely interested, ask: So, how was your day?

In a fraction of a second she flickers through the events of the day, smiles, and says Great! Her smile is infectious and you find yours matching it as you reply. Excellent! So was mine. What did you do?

She's had a great day. You've had a great day. She feels a small (at this stage) degree of rapport and should have little problem sharing her good mood. This leads her into talking about what she did to have such a great day, a list of sentences in which you should find any number of conversational hooks to bite on.

Example 2

You walk across to her and, genuinely interested, ask: So, how was your day?

In a fraction of a second she flickers through the events of the day, sighs, and says Awful. Her sadness is infectious and you feel an empathic frown flow across your face as you ask Oh, what happened?

This then theoretically leads her into talking about what happened, and gives you the opportunity to show her that you can bring her from a pisspoor mood into a happy one. Hear her out. Whereas to fix up our bad moods we (i.e. men) usually look for solutions to the cause, women tend to share their feelings. Once she's unloaded the baggage, you've got rapport. Time to turn her mood around and get her happy. Not easy, but attainable.

Example 3

You walk down to her and, genuinely interested, ask: So, how was your day? She's in a torpor. Boring. Looking for a spark of life to flash across her eyes, you continue. Oh. In which case, how was yesterday? She sighs. Just as bad. Medic! We need some 50mg of adrenaline over here, STAT! You figure it's time to have some fun and, placing your hands apart as if you're measuring a fish, say: So you're pretty sure you don't feel this excited yet? She looks, pauses. No. You bring your hands closer. Perhaps you're feeling this excited? She can see where you're going. Was that slight muscle-twitch a hint of a smile hastily covered? Not really. You hold up in one hand a very small gap between your thumb and forefinger and, smiling but seriously: Could you possibly be at the very least, entertaining the thought of considering the likelihood of being this excited.

If you can bring a smile to a catatonic, they'll love you for it. Same with angry people. Personally, I enjoy the challenge of making pissed-off people smile.

**You look exactly like.** A brilliant opener by Clifford, Clifford's Seduction Newsletter: My all purpose opener. I look at them as if I recognize them and then I go up and say Excuse me, I don't mean to interrupt you while you are (whatever she is doing), but you look exactly like you know, it is amazing how much you look like this person you look just like (as you drag this out you develop rapport immediately, it's great)

From here you have to judge her personality. The real ending is You look exactly like someone I should get to know better or somebody I would like to meet! But if you sense that she's uptight or has no sense of humour, go serious with something like you know, the more I look at you the more I realize that you aren't who I thought you were, but I would like to meet you in any event. My name is.

**The Horoscope.** Brother Andy, Clifford's Seduction newsletter: Hey, my horoscope today said that I need to make new friends, and as weird as that sounds, I could actually use some new friends. My name is (Myname) Hi, I'm (Cutegirl) It's nice to meet you, (Cutegirl) (Smalltalk)

Well, I'm in a hurry, but if I could get your number so we can sit down and have some lunch one day, that'd be great.

Okay, sure (Myname), here

#### 4.7.2 The cold approach

**Him:** Hi, my name's Dave, what's yours?

**Her:** (typically) GriseldAnswer:

**Him:** Right, Griselda, now we're on first name terms, how about a fuck?

Delivered seriously, you'll get a yes and a fuck out of about only every 25th girl you approach this with. Yes, these are actual statistics - this was a description of one guy's style who indeed has a success rate of 1 in 25 times, but who (not surprisingly also gets slapped about a lot But modify this to the **GM** style - forestall any negative responses, be just kidding, joking and humorous instead of being serious, get her to laugh, then continue with the remainder of the **GM** arsenal - and if you do it right, your success rate will skyrocket and you won't have to possess the reflexes of Thresh to avoid all the SLAPS! flying your way

David Off, **ASF**: A friend of mine has a minimalist **GM** technique that seems to work. He simply grunts 'SEX' at women, that's it! Seems to work about 10% of the time he rarely leaves a bar or party empty handed.

#### 4.7.3 The collision approach

By Rod Munch, mindlist:

Now here's what ya do you see a good looking girl walking down the street from a distance. Work it out so you accidentally get right in front of her and you both have to come to a screeching halt. Then, when she sez, Excuse me, or whatever, you say, Oh, it's no problem. You would have stopped me in my tracks even if you weren't blocking my way!

Here she can either laugh or move on w or o comment. If she moves on, she either has a dull wit or no sense of humor, and in either case I don't want anything to do with her. If she laughs, you hit her with Ross's line (and I will admit this is a damn good one), You know, it's good that you laughed, cuz it shows your mine is sharp and you have a good sense of humor, and I wanted to see if you had more going for you than just your looks.

Then of course you continue with anything else (offer to meet over coffee, number close, run pattern, anything).

#### 4.7.4 The available chair approach

Anonymous contributor, mindlist: You walk up to one or more women who are sitting at one of these outdoor cafe tables. Be sure you walk up to a group where there is a chair at their table that isn't being used. Maybe you should buy something at the cafe first, but that's probably not required.

You then smile and say, Hello, I was wondering if this chair was being used by anybody or I was wondering is this chair available?

They'll say no or yes, the chair's available. They assume you need to borrow it for some table you'll be eating at.

So after they answer you, give a big smile and plop yourself down in the chair with a relieved sigh. Then maybe say something like, Boy, it sure feel good to sit down for a second. By the way, my name's Ben, how do you do?

#### 4.7.5 The crappy sketch-artist approach

Speed Seduction newsletter, Ross Jeffries:

Ok. This is a perfect approach to use with women who are in a group, although students have used it on women sitting alone as well. It works with or without initial eye contact too! What you do is carry around a pen and a small spiral-note pad. Catch the eye of the lady you fancy IF YOU CAN, but if not, don't worry about it. If you DO catch her eye, make a big show of pretending to sketch her. Furrow your brow and act as if you are in deep concentration. (It works even if you CAN'T catch her eye, but do make the effort!)

Now, what you are doing here is a PARODY of the old, shopworn, trite, May I sketch you, beautiful lady gig?. Because what you are actually doing on that pad of paper, Buckwheat, is sketching the crappiest, STICK FIGURE drawing of her that would embarrass a dyslexic five year old! Draw her friends in very tiny, no bigger than the size of dimes (*Warning! This could result in her friends becoming obstacles and cock-blockers, see Group tactics for more information*). Label it accordingly, such as, Beautiful Woman At Dinner With Friends. Then with a flourish, sign it, date it, and fold it two.

Walk up to her at the table and say, Excuse mebut your beauty has inspired me to high art. At this point, you can work it two ways. You can simply walk away and return to your seat as she opens and unfolds it. What will happen is she will pause then burst out laughing and show it to her friends. After you've returned to your seat, wave with a flourish and take a bow, like you are proud of your work. About 50% of the time they will wave you over to the table and play along.

Explain that it is an ABSTRACT rendition that emphasizes the underlying ephemeral aspects of the counterpointing metaphorical structure as super-imposed on the physical aspects of the rendition of the work. Ham it up good!

Above all, understand that this approach is a TEST. It is a test to see if these women are open, friendly and have good, fun personalities and it is also, primarily a way to GET YOURSELF INTRODUCED TO THE TABLE!

Now, a good way to get the conversation going once you've been introduced to the table is to ask a simple question:

I'm curious about something. Which one of you has the most curious and adventurous mind?

They will usually volunteer a girl and ask why. You then say, Because I just took this really funky self-improvement seminar and they were talking about all sorts of cool ways things really work in your mind. Who wants to see something REALLY cool?

You are then, my friend, off to the races. You have also pre-qualified TO SELECT THE MOST RESPONSIVE PROSPECT. Sometimes the most responsive will be the most physically attractive and sometimes not. But YOU are letting THEM do all the work by finding the right prospect FOR YOU!

The other way is to work this is to wait for her to laugh and THEN say, I'm glad you laughed because you guys all look like you have open and fun personalities, and I wanted to find some way to introduce myself. My name is

Then simply hit them with the question about who has the most open and curious mind.

Another alternative is to say, I'm glad you laughed because I noticed you here with your friends and I wanted to get a glimpse of the personality inside of the beauty (*or a glimpse of your personality as well for a less supplicative approach*) before I introduced myself. My name is Then offer to do her hand-writing by saying, Well, look if you're open and adventurous enough for it I analyze handwriting. You'll learn secrets about yourself your best friends don't know and I'll get to find out if you're the kind of person I'd like to get to know better.

This Crappy Artist approach also works wonders for waitresses, hostesses, flight-attendants, etc. etc. etc. It works for girls sitting alone or with friends. It's the perfect way to get the attention of women lying face down, asleep in the sun at the beach or by the pool. It's fun, easy and really quite effective but it does take some balls and every once in a while, some women won't appreciate it. I even once had a woman rip the drawing in half and glare at me (*at which point you should be glad that you found out so quickly, what a nasty personality she has*).

#### 4.7.6 The dramatic approach

The aim of the dramatic approach is to get her attention along with everyone else's that happen to be nearby, and then reveal to her, that the only reason you did what you did, was to get her attention. This could even come at the cost of making a fool out of yourself, but once she realises you did that on purpose, there's a good chance she'll dismiss it as you being simply crazy - which by the way is exactly the kind of man many girls like and want

(Examples taken from Sweep women off their feet and into your bed by ?):

##### Example 1

I was driving along when I saw this goddess waiting for the bus. I slammed the brakes, put my blinkers on, left the car in the middle of the street and quickly ran to her. The whole commotion got her attention but it wasn't complete until she realized that all this is for her. I simply went up to her and said:

Has anyone ever told you that you are so beautiful that you can stop traffic? Because you just did. I never do anything like this, but I saw you from my car and I knew that if I don't do something I may never have the opportunity to find out the name of a girl so beautiful.

I'm Michelle, she said. From that moment on she was already swept away knowing the length someone would go just to find out her name. Needless to say, I parked my car quickly, and went for a coffee with her where I had the opportunity to lay it on thick.

##### Example 2

Steve (changed the name to protect the not so innocent) was stopped at the red light when he saw her from his car. She was gorgeous. What an excellent opportunity to meet someone he thought.

He went around the block, parked his car and went right to that office where he saw the girl. He went inside and tripped on the carpet and fell like a ton of bricks right in front of this girl's desk. She didn't know how to react. She didn't know whether she should laugh or show concern for this poor guy. When Steve got up laughing she started laughing too. He then said with satisfaction in his face

I knew you had a smile that could light up the room.

Then he turned around getting ready to leave, saying goodbye. The girl looked at him with a puzzled look on her face asking him

Can I help you with anything? You must've been looking for something when you first came into the office.

Not really he replied, I saw you from the street and thought you could use a laugh so I orchestrated this whole falling thing to see if I can make you smile. And just as I thought, you do have a smile that can light up the entire room. Sorry, I'm so rude I didn't even introduce myself. Hi my name is Steve.

I'm Carrie.

#### 4.7.7 The cellular approach

Vampire2727, ASF: You're on a bus, sitting next to a HB and there's no good excuse to start talking Take your mobile or cellular phone, pretend to call someone and have a fictitious (short) conversation. Then hang up. Start to comment about the conversation with the HB. The beauty of the thing is: you get to CHOOSE the subject of the conversation on the phone so when you start talking to the HB, you're at whatever subject you chose.

Suggestion by Tom, **ASF**: Err make sure to disable your phone so that it doesn't ring when you pretend you're using it

Suggestion by Nathan Szilard, **ASF**: You look her in the eyes and say to your fictitious friend Yeah, it's always the same story, girls keep ogling at me, yeaaaah, there's one in front of me, and you know what the worst is? She's shy. Yeah she's shy. She's been looking at me for 10 min. And she hasn't even yet started a conversation! Ok; I mean, at least I appreciate the fact that she has a LOT of self-control; she has not felt me up so far. If she doesn't laugh HERE, well damn

Suggestion by Ned Ragduos, **ASF**: Some phones have a ringer test or a ringer volume control, which you could use to pretend the phone is ringing. Then you ask First you gotta give me your ID number. OK. Let me remind you the rate for this call is 80 cents a minute. And you look up the number in a book or whatever, and start your stopwatch. Then you launch into a phone-sex conversation like as if you're selling phone sex. The great thing about this method is you can have a cheat-sheet listing all the patterns right there in front of you.

#### **4.7.8 The familiar approach**

##### **Act like you already know her**

One of the easiest and most effective ways is to start talking to them, like you've already know them. Just start in the middle, like you'd go on from where you left off the last time you two met or just start with anything new, just as if you were talking to an old acquaintance of yours Skip all opening-lines (99.9% of them suck and girls hate them) and introductions (she's gonna be offering her name and phone number son anyway, you just need to construct the opportunity for her. It is very important not to convey the image that you are hitting on her, at least not while initiating contact. Being friendly (and not drooling over her), being confident (and not sweating, trembling and stuttering) and being humorous go a long way in achieving this.

##### **Fool her into thinking that she knows you**

Kevin Kupal, mindlist: Look surprised, then look away for a while, then look at her then look surprised again. She may open a discussion. If not, open yourself by saying something like:

You look strangely familiar. I swear I must have seen you somewhere. (pause). I can't remember yet. Let's switch it around. Do you HAVE THAT FEELING that you STRONGLY RECOGNIZE ME. Do you HAVE THAT FEELING NOW that IM UNCANNILLY FAMILIAR.(hun)

Her (most likely response, if the principle works): yeah I must have seen you from somewhere

You: You want to sit down for a cup of coffee while we figure out why we feel so familiar with each other ? (presup hehehe).

##### **The High 5 modification**

Craig, **ASF**: I give girls high fives all the time, usually when they are walking in the opposite direction as me and we cross paths in a club. Then, the next time I see them I say, I remember you! and then we are instant friends! I will also just go up to a girl and put my hand up in high 5 position, then when they slap it I'll just start talking and go into my routine.

#### **4.7.9 Pez opener**

A classic opener by Mystery, described by Craig in Clifford's Seduction Newsletter:

You walk up to a girl, tilt your head to the side and look serious, stare for a second and wait for her to give you the What do you want look. Crack a half smile, and pull out the Pez.

Me: Pez? (This is fuckin' unreal you can use it anywhere and it always gets a laugh. And who doesn't love Pez?)

Her: hehehel love Pez!

Me: Didn't your mom warn you about taking candy from strangers?

Her: Yeah.

Me: And it's bad for your teeth.

Her: Yeah, but I like it!

Me: Isn't it funny how what's dangerous can be so exciting? Tell ya what (transition to proceeding to talk over coffee or a pattern or a number close etc)

By the way, I don't have a clue what Pez is, seems to be some sort of candy or sweets. Just carry some around to offer to the ladies you'd like to get to know more intimately

#### **4.7.10 You look stunning approach**

Ross Jeffries (adapted and updated):

One of the best approaches I've ever used for meeting women is just to be incredibly direct, but also VERY low key. This combination exerts an almost HYPNOTIC fascination. So, for example, if I spot a woman I find attractive, in a low-key, but direct way, I'll walk up to her and say,

Excuse me (you're not really excusing yourself for making her feel really-really good in just a moment, you're giving her a command to stop whatever she's doing and pay attention to you, you can alternatively



use Forgive me for interrupting you telling her to interrupt her train of thought and focus all her attention on you, seemingly in order for her to be able to determine whether or not to forgive you, I just wanted to tell you.(pause a second or two for effectthey will begin to wonder what?. what does he want to tell me?) I think you're absolutely stunning.and I really wanted to meet you. (Pause again)

My name's . I then extend my hand and shake theirs!

What makes this approach work?

- You are being DIRECT, with no excuses or apologies. This RADIATES confidence.
- It's done LOW KEY! I talk SLOWLYno rushing.I'm radiating, affinity, warmth and relaxed power instead of need or horniness.

When you do this, it doesn't matter that a moment before she was obsessing on that overdue bill or her yeast infection. You've got her attention BIG TIME!

Now you can put her on a sense of adventure test by using a little intrusion. What does this mean? Simply you need to intrude SLIGHTLY and I do mean S-L-I-G-H-T-L-Y on her personal space; not so much that she pulls back or runs or slaps you, but enough to make her wonder and get a bit excited. How do you do this? Well, when you take her hand to shake it DON'T LET GO AFTERWARDS! Keep holding on as you continue to talk to her, looking straight in her eyes. Will SOME women pull their hands away? YOU BET! Maybe 30 to 40%. But never mind that. The one's that keep holding your hand for a moment longer though. have passed your sense of adventure test You have made them already slightly attracted to you in some 5 to 10 seconds from first meeting you

The effectiveness of this approach is however limited with mostly 7s and 8s. The really absolutely stunning women will most probably not be too phased by the you look absolutely stunning line. Also keep in mind, that this approach is a two-edged sword - it is powerful and direct, but it is also an obvious come-on. If she likes this approach, you've propelled yourself in her direction a great deal. If however this is not the case and she thinks you're a pathetic supplicator (depends on how you deliver it though, try to follow Ross Jeffries' suggestions of being low-key but confident and direct) then you've probably propelled yourself much more further away from her - in which case a casual we've known forever or a **neg** approach might have worked better. Have no despair though, you'll learn from experience.

Once again, the following is an example of major supplication and might not work on the best looking women (see Neghits explained for more information on that), but then again, it might, and especially as it is so quick and easy, you better use this as opposed to having done nothing at all

The corny line approach. Speed Seduction newsletter, Ross Jeffries: I was doing some errands in a local mini-mall when I spotted an unbelievably hot-bodied woman in tight-fitting work-out outfit. As she was leaving the yogurt place with her double combination vanilla or chocolate swirl, I said, Excuse me, has anyone ever told you you're a shining example of physiological or genetic perfection?

Her response of course, was to laugh and say Thank you no, you are the first!

I then USED her laughter response by saying, Well, I'm glad you laughed. Because although you really are breathtaking, and I wanted to get a glimpse at the personality inside of the beauty before I introduced myself. My name is Ross.

I then invited her to sit down while we enjoyed a brief hand-writing analysis. But notice here, that I mentioned and USED the fact that she laughed as a way of establishing that I was looking for MORE than her physical beauty.

#### 4.7.11 Pacing the ongoing reality

A good tool to use for instant rapport, especially when approaching (as you need to overcome her possible cautiousness about you and do it fast) is pacing the ongoing reality. What this means, is describing both the very recent (for example her having been idle and you having approached her), ongoing (you talking to her and her being pleasantly surprised) and near future events (her feeling good about getting to know a handsome stranger like you) in a pleasant, humorous and believable manner. Here's a modified example originated by Clifford in Clifford's Seduction newsletter. It starts out with some basic approaching elements (pardoning, complimenting her, offering your name), which are sometimes frowned upon by more experienced **PUA**-s (see Complimenting her, Neghits and Should I offer my name? for more information on why), but the ensuing pacing of ongoing reality creates an overall pleasant atmosphere of honesty, simplicity and sincerity, which is often almost impossible to resist The modified example pacing by Clifford, Clifford's Seduction newsletter:

Excuse me, I don't mean to interrupt you (drinking coffee or reading the newspaper or waiting for the commuter or your train of thought), but I just wanted to tell you that I find you very attractive and wanted to meet you. My name is Rick, what's yours? (Here comes the pacing) You know, you never know when something wonderful is about to happen, like you could find yourself (in the cafe or in the waiting-hall or

sitting on the bench or where ever) just thinking about (eating another donut or what time the commuter arrives or whatever she's doing or expecting to happen), and the next thing you know an attractive stranger is talking to you, and as you listen to him you may notice that even though (you've never seen him before or you've seen him before at this bus-stop or you've met him before here in this library), somehow today, because he is talking to you, you may see him in a new and different way. Can you imagine that?

Now what you did here, is you told her something that she invariably had to agree with - yes, she was where you said she was, doing what you told her she was doing, thinking in the lines of what you hinted she was, yes, yes and yes. And all of these things were quite simple for you to say - all you had to do was to describe the scenery But in her mind it doesn't matter - she finds herself agreeing to what you're saying, over and over again. And it's not some unimportant who-cares and so-what stuff like the sun is shining and the buildings are tall and people are walking by either, it's actually something quite important as it is about what she was doing and what she was thinking about. So while she is listening to you and she finds herself agreeing with you on some fairly important matters, the agreeance she has in her mind creates a feeling of enthusiasm and being close to you, and in effect - instant rapport.

Having had to agree with so many things, the few things that she probably wouldn't agree with on their own, seem also much more acceptable as a consequence. So maybe she wasn't pleasantly surprised when you approached her, or maybe she wouldn't describe you as particularly handsome - but now that you've showered her with so many truisms to begin with, the ones that wouldn't ring so true by themselves seem much more true amongst all the other truisms. Thus for example you telling her she was pleasantly surprised when she thought she wasn't, will have her re-evaluate the nature of her surprise as a consequence of all the other truisms that surround it. Don't overload her mind with things that she probably wouldn't agree with though - keep a fine balance, push things in your pacing just a bit above the actual and towards the more positive, for if you go overboard, she will stop agreeing with you and bye-bye instant rapport.

Clifford continues: Now listen for her response - one thing that may happen here and which has happened to me many times is that she may be one of those women who starts talking a lot and you won't be able to get much of what you are thinking of saying out. This is a great sign. Usually I just smile knowingly and let them talk their little hearts out. As soon as the topic of sex comes up, you know you've got her. Just lay back, be friendly, don't say too much, and she will talk herself right into your bed. You may need to invite her for a coffee or a drink at the right time (I have found a lot of the talkers will extend an invitation to you themselves and you just have to watch for it).

Even during the remote possibility, that she doesn't display immediate interest, you still have plenty of options to evoke it - eliciting values, conversing on general patterning themes or even outright patterning, displaying the general attractive traits of humour and confidence plus anything you came to know she wants in a man via eliciting values etc etc. However, even if you need a follow-up technique to continue with, thanks to your initial pacing of the ongoing reality you're well on your way to getting her to like you. And from there on to well, whatever your goal happens to be

#### **4.7.12 Buying her a drink**

I'll make it short: don't buy her a drink. Don't offer to buy her a drink neither agree to her demands (I'm thirsty., Will you buy me a drink? etc). Here's why - if you do, you supplicate. And women have nothing but scorn and disrespect for supplicating men. Let me give a few examples to illustrate this.

**Her** (thinking Let's see if I can hook this sucker): Will you buy me a drink?

**You** (thinking Oh boy am I in luck, this woman must like me, she's asking me to buy her a drink): Sure!

**Her** (thinking Ha! Another supplicating male to buy me a drink just because I asked him. What a wimp. Do they really all think I'm gonna go in bed with them for a bottle of beer? Jeez. I'll take my drink and continue searching for a REAL MAN.): Thanks! You're so sweet! Bye now!

**You** (confused): Hey. wait! Um?

So even if she stays for say five or ten minutes and has a nice little chit-chat with you - you started with a crash and burn, you've already been crossed out in her book of prospective partners because you SUPPLICATED!

Offering to buy her a drink is even worse. You are voluntarily becoming a supplicator. The women will either refuse the drink (they want nothing to do with a wimp like you), accept the drink and then ignore you (they still want nothing to do with a wimp like you, but they wanted the drink) or - the more sensitive women will accept the drink and even stay with you but all the while feeling uncomfortable about it (I accepted the drink, so I guess I should stay for a while, it would be rude to leave. But he must be thinking now, that if I accepted the drink and am staying with him, then there's some more in this for him. But there isn't! He's a supplicator! I don't want him! I'll have got to try to make my exit the moment the situation presents itself!). And if she feels uncomfortable about being with you, do you think you stand a chance with her? Of course, you can turn the situation around for you if you're REALLY GOOD - but why make life harder for yourself?

So what to actually do if she gives you a Will you buy me a drink?. If she seems to be actually interested in you - you have been having a conversation for a while and she uses the buy me a drink to test you (So does this guy like me enough to buy me a drink?) or she is approaching you with the intention getting to know to you and just happens to use the most popular **AFC**-line (Can I buy you a drink?) reversed (Will you buy me a drink?) to initiate a conversation - then explain to her, that it is not your principle to buy drinks to women, but she could buy YOU a drink An example:

**Her:** Will you buy me drink?

**You:** No. But you can buy me a drink

**Her** (thinking Argh. Gmph. He didn't supplicate! Could this be. a real man!? What's this, I'm getting wet!?): Am. um. Yes!

If however she seems to be cruising, fishing for drinks and doesn't seem to care the least bit about you, telling her No would mean she'd just move on without listening to you any further and getting her drink from some chump eventually anyway. So you need to stop her cold in her tracks Here's an example from **ASF**:

**Her:** Will you buy me a drink?

**You:** Give me a French kiss.

NOTE that the tongue play must be an explicit part of the bargain up front. None of this peck on the lips BULLSHIT, because you are still supplicating if you settle for that. Here's the beautiful part: If she says no, now SHE is the person who said no in the situation, instead of you! You don't have to be the jerk for turning her down. If she says yes, tongue-action and **kino** right away. Then get her a drink as a reward Note that she will probably demure before caving in, this is your chance to show personality and be playful. Go **GM** and **Mr. Smooth** on her right away!

You aren't uptight are you? Don't you go out to have fun? We're having fun!

You like cool guys don't you?

It's not hot sex or anything just a little kiss!

#### 4.7.13 Should I ask for her name?

Forget it. It might seem like an innocent and easy way of getting to know each other - My name's ., what's yours?. But as everyone and their mom is doing that, it is just plain lame. If she's not interested in you, she'll forget your name in an instant. And if she is, believe me, she's gonna ask for it And this way it even becomes a little test of am-I-getting-anywhere-with-this-girl? If during the conversation she suddenly discovers to her amazement that goosh, I don't even know this guy's name?! and asks for it. you're well on your way

Asking for her name is propagated by some on the pretence, that this way you'll get to be formally introduced. And what is that supposed to mean? Now that she knows your name, she'll be burning hot for you? Hardly. Rather, you get to be formally categorised as a chump, or maybe a friend if you're lucky (believe me, you're not if that is what happens)

One more argument against asking for names - you ask for her name and then, oh goosh, you forget it! She expects you to know it but you don't. And What's your name again? is not even a **neg** - where's the compliment in that? You could of course go Well, I know you had a very beautiful name. but what was it exactly? - use this one to **neg** her if you asked for her name and forgot it. But better just forget trying to juggle with names and let her ask yours first. And see, if she remembers

In conclusion - names are fine as long as she initiates the exchange. Until then - remain a man of mystery

#### 4.7.14 Leech off someone else's crash and burn

This one is simple. You see a guy hitting an a girl and stalling, doing a crash and burn, getting shot down - in other words failing miserably. The guy leaves with his tail between his legs mumbling Bitches to himself. You move in. If you overheard them talk, you can say: That must have been the worst pick-up line I've ever heard. Or if you didn't: That must have been one of the most pathetic approaches I've ever seen. BOOM! She cracks up laughing - she has found a soul-mate, someone who feels exactly the same way, who understands, someone she can share all the ridicule she has for that poor underachieving **AFC** and all the scorn she has for his performance. You are instantly in a heated discussion with her about all the dumb approaches she has encountered and pick-up lines she has heard with rapport rising like fever She will drop all her shields, because out of all people, you, having approached the way you did, CAN NOT POSSIBLY BE TRYING TO DO A PICK-UP on her Hehe

A variation of this - you see a guy hitting an a girl and she is obviously uncomfortable about it, maybe even to the point of disgust. But the guy is still staying - either the girl is just too sweet to tell him to f ck off, or the guy is a true obnoxious a-hole. Or both. Either way, you move in. Oh here you are! Christina darling, I've been looking all over for you! We had to be at Tanya's house like half an hour ago already, come on! (or whatever BS, you get the idea If the guy looks at you with a big What the f uck!?! face, say in a matter of fact voice and not even looking in his direction 'scuse me, this is my girlfriend. Now take the girls hand and pull her away. She is dumbfounded to do anything herself but once she realises, what just happened she realises that you're are her saviour! Her hero! She'll do anything anything anything for you (not bad huh.

#### 4.7.15 If she's working

**You:** You must get awfully tired by the end of the night,

**Her:** (nodding)

**You:** Do you ever get a chance to go on vacation?

**Her:** (something)

**You:** If you were to take a real vacation in your ideal spot, what would it be like?

**Her:** (describing her ideal vacation spot) (Play along with her fantasy, offer her some more descriptions in the same line. If she asks you the same, answer with Before I answer that.)

**You:** Let me ask you something else. You know that feeling you have when you get home after a hard day of work and all you can think about is stripping off your clothes and sliding into a hot bath or taking a shower? Which do you prefer? A Bath or a shower?

**Her:** Bath

**You:** You know how sometimes, before you even get in, you imagine the heat just working its way through every part of your body and then you actually slide in, and that warmth just takes you and you surrender to it? (have something is store for a shower as well

**Her:** (something)

**You:** What's your name?

**Her:** Myname

**You:** Well, Myname, it's really been fun talking to you. It's too bad that we won't get the chance to do it again without all these distractions and interruptions.

**Her:** (If she doesn't catch the hint, then before you leave.)

**You:** You know, I meant what I said about it being fun talking to you. Maybe we could meet for coffee sometime. Like tomorrow?

#### 4.7.16 If you just have to use a pick-up line

Like when you used the **3s** rule and now have her attention. but haven't said anything yet and cannot think of anything to say. If you just have to use a pick-up line, introduce it like this: Hi, I wanna try a pick-up line on you or my friend gave me this crazy collection of pick-up lines, tell me what you think about this one or some of them, then pick one of the following. If she responds (doesn't matter whether its good or bad, just as long as she doesn't completely ignore you), say Well, here's another one, how 'bout this, then pick another one. At least one of them should get a laugh. Then you can ask what other lines has she heard recently and what's the sleaziest she's ever heard or what's the best she's ever heard. But on the whole, pick-up lines are lame (don't mention that aloud though, you used them to start a conversation with her, remember?, so change the subject and move onto using a technique of your preference (be it patterns, negging, eliciting values, whatever). So here are some pick-up lines to use as a last-ditch resource (or if you're using the **GM technique**, to integrate with your style):

- (Delivered rapid-fire fast!) Hi! Do you have a boyfriend? Would you like a better one? Answer the second question first!
- (To a woman in a tight outfit at a party or bar!) Hi! That's a great outfit you're almost wearing!
- (To woman with great legs in any situation!) Excuse, but I just wanted to tell you, if God made anything nicer than your legs (or smile) he's saving it for himself!
- The word of the day is legs. Let's go back to my place and spread the word.
- Let's go back to my place, order some pizza and fuck. SLAP. Okay, how about chinese?
- I like every bone in your body, especially mine.
- Nice shoes. Wanna fuck?
- I'm not trying to pressure you. I don't want to have sex without mutual consent. Oh and by the way, you have my consent.
- Let's go to my place and do the things I'll tell everyone we did anyway.
- All those curves, and me with no brakes.
- If I told you you had a beautiful body, would you hold it against me?
- Is it hot in here or is it just you?
- Why don't you sit on my lap and we'll talk about the first thing that pops up.
- Heybabe, I was hoping you could help me out for a sec (pause)? You see a snake just bit my nads and I need you to suck the poison out.
- Can you help me? I have to pee and the doctor said I can't lift anything heavy.
- I like your legs so much I'm going to name them. This one is Christmas and this one is New Years. Can I see you in between the holidays?
- Do you believe in love at first sightor do I have to walk by again?

- Pardon me, I seem to have lost my phone number. Can I borrow yours?
- If I were to ask you for sex, would your answer be the same as the answer to this question?
- Excuse me, I just noticed you noticing me and I just wanted to give you notice that I noticed you too.
- (As you walk by, turn around and say Excuse me, did you just touch my ass? No? Damn!
- Do you know the difference between a hamburger and a blow job? No! Well in that case, d'ya wanna do lunch?
- Excuse me, miss, do you give head to strangers? No. Well, then, allow me to introduce myself.
- Fuck me if I am wrong, but haven't we met before?
- Is it cold in here, or are you just happy to see me? (For the uninitiated - this references to erect nipples and is a redo of the classic Mae West line Is that a gun in your pocket or are you just happy to see me?
- That shirt is very becoming on you, and if I was on you, i'd becumming too!

Remember - most of these can only be used as examples of pick-up lines because the lameness, supplication or dirtyness aspects of them are sure to backfire in a majority of cases should you make the mistaken judgement of using them seriously. In certain situations however, some of them are applicable by themselves as well (for example, as part of **GM**-style or neghits) - but which ones? Well, you be the judge

One redeeming quality of most of these pick-up lines however is that they can be used much more effectively to close, not to approach and initiate. Imagine saying Wanna fuck? as a first thing to a woman you just met. Now imagine saying Wanna fuck? to a woman, who you've been talking to for a while already, getting her intrigued, interested, feeling pleasurable, safe, happy and horny. See the difference? So although the general consent among women and pick-up artists alike is that pick-up lines suck - they suck as pick-up lines, but when it comes to closing, you might find yourself using the very same pick-up line you snared at when reading these examples Have fun

- Shall we talk or continue flirting from a distance? (in case you caught some of her signs, but once again, you are better off using anything but a pick-up line to start a conversation).
- What does it feel like to be the most beautiful girl in this room? (major supplication, but might work if she is cute and not drop-dead gorgeous.
- You know, you might be asked to leave son. You're making the other women look really bad. (same as above)
- You're ugly, but there's something about you that intrigues me. (to be used on a real drop-dead gorgeous beauty only)
- What would you do if I kissed you right now? (not that good for a pick-up line, but a definite step in the right direction in case you've been chatting for a while;)
- Would you like to come to a party in my toolshed?
- Why don't you surprise your roommate and not come home tonight?
- What do you say we go back to my room and do some math: add you and me, subtract our clothes, divide your legs, and multiply.
- Ever tried those weird prickly condoms?
- I think I could fall madly in bed with you.
- Pardon me, but are you a screamer or a moaner?
- Excuse me, but would you like an orally stimulated orgasm?
- Excuse me, miss, do you give head to strangers? No. Well, then, allow me to introduce myself.
- Is that your boyfriend? I think you can do better than that!
- Oh no, I'm choking! I need mouth to mouth, quick!
- Like the look of your crotch.
- Are you as good as they say you are?
- Baby, I got a backstage pass to your ass!
- I wanna put my thingy into your thingy.
- Your place or mine? Tell you what? I'll flip a coin. Head at my place, tail at yours.
- Who's a nice girl like you doing in a place like this?
- Hi, stare at the floor for a while would ya Why? Because you gonna be staring at the ceiling for a week.
- You are so beautiful that I would crawl ten miles on my hands and knees through broken glass just to jerk off in your shadow.
- You are so beautiful I'd drag my balls through a mile of broken glass, followed by a mile of hot coals just to sniff the tire tracks of the laundry truck that takes your panties to the cleaners.



- You are so beautiful I'd drag my balls through a mile of barbed wire just to suck the cock that screwed you last.
- Hi, do you know any good opening lines? (wow, that was tame!)

And now, for your enjoyment, some rebuttals women might use on you if you make the mistake of using the above pick-up lines the **AFC** way - trying to win her graces with the supplicative ones while actually making her just plain bored and sick, or trying to get her to have sex with you on the spot with the dirty ones while actually earning a slap in the face. See Dealing with rejection on how to cope with situations like these from the male perspective

He: I'd like to call you. What's your number?

She: It's in the phone book.

He: But I don't know your name.

She: That's in the phone book too.

Q: Wha'dya say to a little fuck?

A: Go away, little fuck.

He: So what do you do for a living?

She: Female impersonator.

Her, after hearing a pick-up line: I liked your approach. Now let's see your departure.

#### 4.7.17 I like. game as an opener

You can use this as either a continuation of a conversation or as an opener. It has the two of you say what you like in turn with you directing the conversation from things and known concepts (movies, music, food) to situations which create different feelings and states (standing in a warm summer rain, experiencing the thrills in an amusement park) to actual descriptions of states and feelings (feeling the excitement yet safety of a joy-ride).

For example, seeing a girl in a record store in the dance music department, idly looking at records, you can start with I like Prodigy. She'll look at you in confusion, as if trying to ask .what? or .were you talking to me?. Never mind that, continue. I like Prodigy, but I also like The Orb. Your turn. By now she has understood the point and will answer something like Ok, well, I like The Chemical Brothers. Now you continue with another band, or switch to food or movies. If you say I like The Matrix after she said she liked the Chemical Brothers, this is obviously going to sound a little strange, so make it known to her by using a humorous tone that you know very well the switch was a little weird, but hey, you're just having fun and you're only inviting her to join. She in turn might switch to food, follow her

But remember - you want to end up with describing feelings and states. With the I like game that is, not with the girl in general. The I like game is not a means to an end, what you really want to end up with is getting her excited about you, getting her phone number, having a cup of coffee, doing a close, showing her the heaven of complete sexual satisfaction - just take your pick

#### 4.7.18 Mr. Smooth technique

This description is fitted for use with a **wingman**. General rules:

- Wherever you are, don't wait for more than three seconds to begin.
- All the time have a game-show host mentality - act jolly, happy, goofy, take it easy, be very open about what you are doing and very open about each consecutive action you have in mind, for every little success (holding hand, hand around her waist, a kiss) show explicit joy and do a high 5 with your **wingman**.
- You might be ignored at first, the girls will try to hint the two of you better leave etc - that's common. But even if your getting the slightest response or feedback, even if negative, don't give up before trying at least five minutes (might seem like a monstrous amount of time, but its not, because you're HAVING FUN, and it is bound to stick to the girls as well, they'll start smiling and laughing eventually and that's what you're aiming for)
- The moment the girls are comfortable with you, you casually take both their hands like no big deal and hold them while still talking and joking your mouth away
- The girls must be having a fun time with the two of you ALL THE TIME! If they're not smiling or laughing, make your act even more jolly (or stupid. An unsmiling girl is not allowed when doing **Mr Smooth**) Thus, no serious topics of discussion, forget all that work or school or hobbies BS. The

discussion has to be extremely simple, even to the point of being childish, just as long as the smile doesn't disappear from the girls' faces

- An exception to the rule above is when you are not explicitly interacting with the girls, like talking to some acquaintances of your that happened to pass by or even complete strangers. This time the fact that the girls are not having fun means, that they're not having fun because YOU are not paying any attention to them for a moment. Temporarily interacting with other people lets the girls feel, how dull and boring it actually is when you're not paying any attention to them - which will urge them to win back your attention and KEEP it
- If the girls are leaving or going somewhere else, attach yourselves to them - they'll definitely feel awkward for a few moments in the beginning, but once you've gotten your act rolling, they won't want you to leave

The routine:

1. Introduce your **wingman**
2. Praise and commend your W (he's my best friend, we've been best friends for years , he's a great guy, captain of the football team etc)
3. I'm sure we shall all become very good friends once we all get to know each other a little more or better
4. Never argue with the girl, not about anything, ever! Repeat 2. and 3. if necessary.
5. Admire and praise the girl as if you're just forwarding, what your W thinks or said - speak in third person to say anything that's on your mind (my friend thinks you have you have fantastic hair - stroke her hair; extremely feminine hands - take her hand, stroke it; my friend thinks you are extremely sexy - stroke her. um. well, use your better judgement. Speaking in third person disarms her from any objections she might have to what is being said - she can't be mad at you because you're just forwarding what your friend said to you earlier and is thinking now, but neither can she attack your friend, for he isn't really saying anything
6. Every time you commend your W to the girl or the girl in third person - touch her arm, put your arm on her shoulder or around her waist and pull her (gently closer to your W.
7. He really likes you, take the hands of the girl and your W and join them. Do the same with your girl, she's probably just standing there laughing hysterically or with her eyes wide open and jaw dropped on the floor unable to believe what's happening right in front of her eyes, she won't have any capacity left to weigh whether she objects to your taking her hand or not Now that you and your **wingman** are both holding hands of your respective girls, its time for a high 5
8. Repeat 2., 3. and 5.
9. Take your W's and his girl's head and try to push them gently together. Alternatively: He's OK or a pretty good looking guy, isn't he? (the girl agrees) Very good, let's play rock-paper-scissors The looser has to kiss the winner The trick is, it doesn't matter in the least who wins or loses if a kiss has to take place in any case
10. If the girl refuses to kiss. He really likes you, point at your cheek - you just meant a kiss on the cheek Now it doesn't matter, who kisses whom on the cheek (its better if the girl initiates though).
11. Do the same with your girl. Alternatively - your W says: Now that we've kissed, we want you do the same. Time for a high 5 after this
12. Praise what just took place: That felt or was really good or pleasant or fantastic, didn't or wasn't it?, Its really good, that we get along with each other so well or that we are such good friends.
13. But it would be truly fantastic to kiss for real, now wouldn't it? (figures
14. Move closer to your girl, put hand around her waist.
15. Repeat the gentle pushing together of heads - now with the overt purpose of a real kiss, repeat with your girl, high 5, praise what just took place
16. To your W's girl You've really made a fantastic choice with this guy, because he is (bla-bla, lots of positive stuff again)
17. It really feels good to be with you, we are so glad that we happened to meet you and get to know to you. It would be really great, if we could talk to you again and get to know you even better. Time to collect their phone-numbers. Kiss-goodbye, this time make it really good, long and intimate. We have to move on. Wait no more than 3 seconds (ok, maybe 10 seconds max) to engage another pair, don't worry even if the previous girls are still around and could see you. Don't however forget to capitalise on the girls that turn out to be fairly ready, as in ready for it anything Suggest a change of venue: Hey, W, is that offer of yours to drink that fine wine or champagne of yours still standing?. W: Sure! You: Hey girls, wanna come along, he lives just around the corner and has an excellent stock of wine or champagne or cigars

**Mr Shack technique** - a simpler technique of implementing **Mr Smooth**, foregoing the gameshow host style and your friend standing there like a dork who seemingly can't speak or act for himself;) and stressing the wow my friend is really a great guy! aspect. By Johnny Shack

You should get together with a couple of mates and set out a schedule. It will state that each of you are responsible for getting a certain amount of dates for the guys in the programme each month. Let's say it is only 2 dates per month you need to organise. You will all now have a busy date schedule on top of what you are already doing and this will start an exciting time in your life. This can also give you the skills you need to get your own dating happening. The practise you will be getting will be invaluable because you are learning what works and what doesn't with approaching women.

You will need to approach girls you don't know and talk about your friend. If she says no it won't hurt your ego because she is saying no about your friend. All you have to say is this: Hi, my name is Joe and I noticed you about 5 minutes ago. It might seem a little strange me coming and introducing myself like this but don't panic. Have a bit of a laugh here and she probably will to. It'll break up the intensity and things always flow better when you relax the girl.

I'm actually speaking to you because a friend of mine has just broken up with his girlfriend and he's a bit down. Always give the impression you (or in this case - your friend) have just broken up with a girl. Women automatically think there must be something wrong with you if you haven't got a girlfriend. So always use this line and you will notice a huge difference.

I told him he should do something a little crazy and let me organise a blind date for him. Anyway that's why I'm talking with you now. He's a great guy and very good looking. It is important to mention that your friend is a great guy and very good looking. Even if he isn't she will hope it is true. Create a picture in her mind. Remember: fantasy is what is needed to start the fire which may burn for a lifetime. Women love fantasy.

How about you give me your phone number and I'll tell him to call you and if you like each other you can go out? Now if she says you should give your friend's number to her and she will call him you say: Yeah that sounds okay but I know he has to go away with work sometime shortly and it might be better if I gave your number to him. Is that okay? This is about the best line to say here when they pull this line on you. When you say your friend has to go away for work it makes him sound successful and chicks love that. When you end it with: Is that okay? she will think you are not being too pushy and she will be guided by your assumption that your friend and her will at least speak on the phone. You are creating an impression that it's just a matter of who will call who. If however they persist with wanting to call your friend instead of him calling her then just give her his number and tell her a couple of good things about your friend. Not too much or it will sound desperate but enough to get her juices flowing.

Note: you must always try and help your friends with dates. Sometimes it reverses and you will end up with the girl. The more you land for friends the more chance there is of a friend going out of their way to help you. It's also a grouse buzz to get your mate laid. You sort of feel part of it as though you were getting laid yourself and your mate will be very happy.

#### **4.7.19 The questions game**

I bet you always have a lot of interesting questions you'd like to ask a lady when you first meet her. Like: What was your first kiss like?, When did you have sex for the first time?, How did you have your first orgasm?, What makes you horny?, Have you ever been caught masturbating? etc, you get the idea (see Eliciting values - the questions for a list of some slightly more normal questions to ask). But you can't just go ahead and ask them - you'll come off as a complete insensitive jerk if you do. And unless you are proficient in the art of directing the flow of the conversation in the direction of your preference (see Eliciting values - introducing the questions), these issues won't usually come up in an ordinary conversation. Thus you have no way of asking them without sounding weird almost. Because however is a little but ingenious way of asking them nevertheless - just start playing the Questions game with her

Originated by Mystery, provided by Craig, Clifford's Seduction newsletter:

**You:** Let's play the question game.

**Her:** What's the question game?

**You:** Well, it's like Truth or Dare but without the Dare, because I don't know how weird you are yet! The questions have to be good ones, no where do you work bullshit, ok? You go first!

**Her:** I can't think of anything!

**You:** Ok, how many boyfriends have you had?

From there the questions will get deeper and more sexual as the game goes along. Then after you have been playing for a few minutes, when it's your turn you can say

**You:** I have a good question for you Would you like to kiss me?

**Her:** I don't know

**You:** Let's find out!

kiss

**You:** I thought so!

Don't go overboard with the sexual questions though. Asking even one of the above questions might do just fine, especially if she responds positively, which is your cue that she would also be ready for the final question

## **4.8 Gimmicks**

### **4.8.1 Use a gimmick to get going**

Ross Jeffries: Are you into metaphysics? Do you believe in astrology? Astral projection? ESP? Tarot cards? What's that you say? You think it's all a bunch of crap? Well, so do I. But guess what? Women eat this stuff up like candy, so I PRETEND to be interested in all of it! Of course, my favourite gimmick of gimmicks is analysing a chick's handwriting. Do I have any training in this field? Have I even read a single book on the subject? OF COURSE NOT! But of course, just by coincidence, we carry the good old Grapho-Deck (you can find it at [www.myhandwriting.com](http://www.myhandwriting.com)), the world's best gimmick for picking up women.

All you need to do is walk into any bar or party with it, and corral the first girl you see. Just walk up and say, Excuse me, I know this might sound a little odd, but do you handwrite or do you print?. After she stares at you like a bug for a second, she'll say, Both. Why?. You say, Well, I got this neat little deck of cards from a friend, and they're supposed to let you analyse a person's writing. I've tried it a few times and it really worked, and you looked like a fun person to break the ice with. Want to give it a go?. Almost always you'll hear yes, and the neat thing is other girls will be watching and then they'll come up to you and ask if you'll, Do me! Do me! I'm serious, it's that easy.

Other gimmicks may include tarot cards, magic tricks and palmistry, the latter of which shall be examined a bit in this guide.

### **4.8.2 Palm reading – why should you use it?**

Many aspects of predicting the future and fortune-telling are very pattern-like - they rely on creating states, leading the imagination etc. Learn what the various lines in people's palms are supposed to mean and you'll never run out of mesmerising things to say to her Besides, doing a palm-reading routine to a girl somewhere in public has an added bonus of a possibility of also other girls in the vicinity getting in line to extend their soft hands for you to touch and examine

Palm-reading (aka palmistry) can also combine patterns and **kino** into one truly powerful strategy. **ASF**: Run the palm reader routine (you don't need to know fuck all about it). Get hold, comment on soft skin or read palm (saying stuff like you can see she's a very highly sexed, physically responsive woman - blah, blah, and really laying it on thick - with embedded commands etc. if you like). Don't let go of her hand while you're doing this, keep looking deep into her eyes then start kissing the hand and telling her some shit about 'people may know each others' mind, but they don't really know each other until their bodies get to know each other. So ok, maybe this example from **ASF** moved a bit too fast, but you get the general idea Just watch her reactions and respond accordingly. If all signs indicate that you could get away with an until their bodies get to know each other-line, then use it

Here's an example of transitioning to palm-reading taken from Eliciting values - the questions:

How do your friends describe you? Use this both for value-eliciting and as prep info for palm-reading, after which you can say Let me see whether you actually are like that as well and transition to palm-reading.

It is however good to know a few things about palmistry beforehand, for it will be far easier to predict her future and look into her past this way Plus your being able to show her how you draw your conclusions adds credibility to what you're saying The next few articles will explain the main lines in the hand and how to read them.

### **4.8.3 A sample reading routine**

Usually the dominant hand is read. But should you wish to hold both of her hands, modify your approach in the following manner:

- Non-dominant hand - the inner potential of the person
- Dominant hand - the actual manifestation and realization of that inner potential

#### **An example routine**

1. Describe her to her according to what you know about the various lines
2. Try to include qualities you've learned about her after having elicited her values and watching her behaviour in general, find the corresponding lines in her palm and show them to her. You can also use the collection of phrases below.

3. Predict something good or positive, don't forget to show her, how you draw your conclusions.
4. Keep holding her hand, look her in the eye, kiss her fingers.
5. People may know each others' mind, but they don't really know each other until their bodies get to know each other Don't go overboard!

**Collection of phrases** - dreamer, open, passionate, sensitive, adventurous, positive (add to this list). The phrases themselves are meaningless, elaborate on each phrase and describe the word through describing the feelings of a person that can be called a dreamer or passionate. But don't shoot in the dark, make sure you know what you're talking about - hopefully you did at least some value-eliciting before you jumped into palm reading

**A few simple examples of reading lines:**

- If she has two fate lines, for example if her fate line is broken mid-hand and another starts running parallel to it, see at what age it happens and voila, you've got a story Don't forget to show how you draw your conclusions or else she might suspect you of BS-ing, but show her the corresponding lines and she'll think ITS PURE GOLD AND THE ROCK-SOLID TRUTH You'll stay on your chosen career path up to the age of about 30, then you'll find a new passion and finally switch over to it at the age of about 35. Simple So OK, we didn't evoke any specific feelings, but believe me, the simple fact that a man that CAN PREDICT HER FUTURE is HOLDING HER HAND will make her feel everything tightening up you-know-where A break in the line of fate can also mean a change of geographical location, so you could also bring travelling, working or living abroad etc into play
- If her fate line breaks up at the base of her palm and or or interacts or intersects with the life line (which very many people have by the way) you can say the following (this is taken from [www.spirit-eagle.com](http://www.spirit-eagle.com), but I really cannot recommend the site - it's all full of advice how to contact your guardian angels and spirits etc, very messed up stuff: (showing her) This means that early in life you experienced some family situation that made you have responsibility as a child. So much so, that you were given duties or existed in a situation where you had to let go of part of your childhood and be in an adult like role. But this usually gives you something nice later in life. Because you had to give up part of your childhood you are given extra life energy support later in life to survive a tough or a difficult experience with more ease and protection. From a patterning point of view, this childhood problem theme was not too great. Should you however show her the appropriate lines in her hand, and she actually did have some childhood problems (and who us didn't?, you have instantly become very close to her - close to her heart and soul, which is a very good place to continue from

On the whole though, these are hardly examples you can memorise and use - they are only supposed to give you the general idea of how you could conjure up your own stories.

**A few closing words** from dead-serious palmists: As a palmist, your attitude is of great importance. Never try to second guess your subject by adding on-the-spot observations and facts you may know beforehand but which are not shown in the palm. If you are reading the palm; read the palm and only that. Ideally you should know nothing whatsoever of the person you are reading. Their hands and your intuition should be enough. Anytime you are meeting someone for the first time, you can pick up a tentative and often very useful first impression of their personality by unobtrusively glancing at the lines of their hand.

But if that doesn't work, we'll just ask for her hand so that we can get an impression of her personality

## **4.9 Clubs and Dancing**

### **4.9.1 Night-clubs vs. other places to meet girls**

(Adapted from Ross Jeffries' newsletter): Bars, night-clubs and night spots? Well, if you want to waste you're money, go ahead. Women in these places are far more uptight, far more likely to be very picky about who'll they'll talk to, and plus you'll probably have to spend some money to get in or stay in. Far better places to meet girls are libraries, parks, coffee-shops and various spots around college campuses. Should you still be a college student yourself and have access to college-premises - boy are you (and all the college-girls you have access to in luck. Think back a minute to when YOU were in college or high school. Did you enjoy studying? Did you like cramming? Or would you welcome virtually any opportunity to put the damn book down and do something more fun, like talk to an interesting, mesmerising stranger?

Should you still opt for the classic clubbing (harvesting night clubs for girls), keep in mind that your chances are much higher in clubs with mainstream music (played by most radio stations), where the girls are much more likely to hang out secretly wanting to meet a man who would give them the satisfaction of a lifetime, as opposed to clubs with rave and techno-music, where a lot of the girls are there just to get high by listening and dancing to the hypnotic beat (with the possibly added effect of using drugs), which often makes them pretty much ignore everything else around them - including you.



A few words in favour of night-clubs by Johnny Shack : This is the place to find single women more so than anywhere else in the world. Nightclubs are reputable for being pick up joints and I don't think I'm telling you anything new. Most clubs with age groups above 18 are very popular and have women (beer) on tap. There is the traditional young persons clubs and then the over 30's and sometimes 40's places. Especially at the older places you do not find women going there with there husband or boyfriend because they are there to get laid or to find a long term partner.

#### 4.9.2 How to switch to the right mindset

Want a laugh? Check this out - If I stand around long enough, maybe something will happen. Now take a look around in a night-club See all those guys - standing or sitting, waiting? Now you know what they're thinking Pathetic Now go get all the girls In an everyday situation, those same guys are not specifically waiting for something to happen, they are simply oblivious. Pathetic again But what do you do? That's right, again, you go get all the girls

In a night-club situation, now that you've had your laugh, whatever you do - don't join all the goofs standing or sitting and just watching the girls on the dance-floor! All that herd of chumps waiting and twiddling their thumbs is known as death row, now you don't want to join them, do you!?

Once you're in the door, it's action-action-action and worshipping the 3s rule. Sounds tough? No, you'll actually make it easier on yourself, especially considering the alternative - going home alone with a headache, remembering all the beautiful girls you only SAW and sleeping with your hand

#### 4.9.3 Asking for a dance

This one is tough.

Ideally you should never encounter a situation where you'd have to ask for a dance. It is best to try any of the alternatives provided below before resorting to the demeaning and supplicating Would you like to dance with me?.

You can use Mr Smooth to start a dance with a group of girls. Or be on the dance-floor by yourself manoeuvring into position with a girl or a group of girls dancing by themselves. Or you can dance near the edge of the dance-floor and pull any girls passing by to dance with you. Or you can act like you already know the girl, take her hand, nod towards the dancfloor and say well, come on! If she seems reluctant, you go oh, come on! If she says I'm tired, BOOM, you're in a conversation (you didn't even notice that, did you?. Tired? Well, not that you mention it, this place is a little crowded or noisy. Why don't we go to someplace quieter where we can talk and you can relax If you let go of her hand in the meantime, grab it again and guide her to a nice and quiet little corner you've already checked out before

Or - you can go the classic AFC way of asking a girl for a dance. If she says yes, great! If however she refuses, you're out of luck. You can try and salvage the situation by joining her for a conversation but she has refused you once already so a come-back will be that much harder to do. Or you can just move on, but remember - having other girls see you get rejected diminishes your chances with them even further. Which could result in the ultimate humiliation of moving from girl to girl and asking for a dance and being turned down all the way until you run out of girls Ok, the latter is unlikely, someone WILL eventually dance with you, but most probably that someone will be (yep, you guessed it - an UG!

Ideally, rejection should never happen, for if you've had a chance to talk to her in a meaningful manner before, she is already dying to have a little kino and grinding with you on the dance-floor But amongst the deafening and blinding circumstances of a typical night-club, this can be hard to do. So she just takes you by face-value, and its gonna be a yes or no.

Also, when doing an all-out asking for a dance, some annoying factors might come to play, over which you have very little control owing to the approach you have chosen. She might be tired, waiting for a friend in a designated spot, just doesn't dance, her boyfriend is just around the corner. All these factors really have no bearing should you choose an approach which also incorporates demonstrating value and personality (beyond having the guts to ask for a dance). In which case waiting for a friend or being tired are quickly out the window plus some more time with you and the boyfriend might share the same route

But without having been able build rapport with her and make her crave for you, you really don't have too many options - maybe thank her, maybe ask her how about later? (yea right) or ask her mind if I join you for some conversation?, nah, these all suck to high heaven, better just move on to the next girl.

Theoretically, you might still stand a chance with her once she sees the girl that was smart enough to agree to dance with you having the time of her life But whatever you do, don't stand there and aggravate her by arguing with her as to why she won't dance with you. Forget her, move on, there's a better-looking and smarter girl (for she knows to appreciate your invitation right behind her, and YOU are what she's been waiting for all her life Or at least this evening

How about when the girl you want to dance with is already dancing with somebody else? Here's a trick by Vilius which might just work, especially if she is bored with him and he is only a clueless chump. Don't use it

on a really good friend though, that just wouldn't be right. But as for the rest, here goes: First of all you must be with a good sense of humour and not be afraid to be bad. You see your friend or an acquaintance (*or any other clueless chump, doesn't really matter*) dancing with the chick you want. Just come to the pair and interrupt them by taking over the MALE partner and just start to dance with him. Usually, the chick won't go anywhere and it'll take just a couple of seconds to feel the rhythm. After some 30 seconds you can just turn around, grab the girl, gently pull her a few feet away and continue dancing with her. Easy, funny trick;).

#### 4.9.4 About dancing

If dancing isn't specifically what you came to do in a night-club, then dancing isn't really what you should be concerned with. Dance your dance, then extract her to a quiet and private place and start working your magic. You could of course get some initial attraction already going on the dance floor if your moves are good - smiles, eye-contact, maybe even some initial **kino** - but then again, maybe not. You know your stuff and you know it works, but dancing can only be helpful at best, it is not the way of achieving your goal. So have fun dancing, but keep your ultimate goal (be it a number close, a close, feeling her up or tonguing her down, making her come right there in the club or taking her home with you in mind).

The exception to this rule are the so-called **kino** girls. They LOVE being touched and they love to touch you in return. Should you happen to hit the dance-floor with a girl like that - don't leave, keep dancing, have fun holding and grinding each other. Once the touching and kissing gets really intimate, you can change venues and no excess talk is needed. Chances even are, she wouldn't be very receptive to any talking strategies anyway - while you are busy patterning or eliciting values, all she is thinking is: Why isn't he touching me? Why does he just keep talking?.

As for the rest of the girls, the amount of time you need to spend on the dance-floor depends on how well you dance. If you're good, dancing is an easy way of attracting girls - you can easily slip in with the most beautiful of girls on the dance-floor plus have everyone else on and off the floor check you out. If however you are average, do as suggested in the beginning - do your dance, then move to a quieter place to have a soul-to-soul, heart-to-heart and eventually a body-to-body discussion.

Jake Thomson, **ASF**: A woman I know and trust advised me one time that in her humble opinion, if man can't dance, he probably can't fuck either. Think about it. Being able to dance well demonstrates that you are comfortable in your body and know how to use it with precision and control. I know from my own experience, limited though it may be, that if a woman can't dance - she generally can't fuck very well either. If she dances well, it's a pretty good bet she knows how to fuck also. So it's one of my tests for fuckability.

Dancing is an ancient pre-copulation ritual. It has been and in many parts of the world is still being officially used (some tribes in Africa, South-America) as the primary criterion for selecting a partner to copulate with. Unofficially though, you can see the same thing happening each night in every club or bar. So one more reason NOT to waste your energy on dancing unless you know how to dance. Or one more reason to LEARN to dance.

#### 4.9.5 Slow dancing

Slow dancing is another exception to the you-didn't-come-here-to-dance rule (see About dancing for the first few exceptions). It is a most excellent way of getting some more intimate **kino** started. If you hear a slow-dance coming up, don't waste any time. Take the girl you're presently with to the dance-floor (unless you're in the middle of a pattern and she is about to fly higher and higher or if you're presently in that 3 second period of having number - and closed one girl and not yet approached another (you haven't just been hanging around, not able to choose who to approach, have you?, either immediately return to the girl you just closed or scope for a suitable **target** in your vicinity).

While-slow dancing, be bold yet sensitive. Be bold - hold her really close to your body, start rubbing her back with your hand. Be sensitive - watch her reactions, if she starts to rub your shoulders, neck or chest or starts grinding her crotch against yours (hmm, it's once again time for you to be bold - begin kissing her neck work your way up behind the ear, then the ear lobe, then closer to the cheeks, then lips. At this point you can just pretty much forget about patterns, eliciting values and what not. You can either stay on the dance-floor some more and grind it slowly and keep kissing even during a fast song or move smoothly to a more private corner for some more petting. Eventually you could check if the bath-room is available. Or suggest a change of venue.

#### 4.9.6 Fast dance to slow dance

You've seen them before - a guy and a girl on the dance-floor, ignoring all the other people diligently wiggling to the fast pace of the music and having a slow dance of their own, touching, kissing. A newly married couple on their honey-moon? Hehe, think again.

Maniac High describes a dance-floor **PU** technique of turning a fast dance to a slow dance, and a slow dance to a oh darn, he had to leave before he could find out Anyway, here's the step by step description. Maniac High, **ASF**:

The **PU** was done with virtually no talking at all. The setting was a disco playing regular fast paced disco dance music.

The guy and the girl make eye contact, and start dancing facing each other. He mirrors her dance moves, making eye contact. This happens for about 2 or 3 minutes.

He puts his arm on her side, to her back, lightly, and is dancing, still following her pace.

He puts the other arm on her other side to her back, but he does not pull her in.

Now he slowly runs both hands up her body, to her armpits, and then up her arms (he raises her arms up in the air).

Then when he reaches the tops of her hands, which are stretched out in the air, he (slowly), runs his hands down her body. His hands slowly slide down till they reach her ass. He doesn't grope it directly, but just they are above the top of her buttocks. The whole thing above (hands up to her hands, down to ass, is slow, takes about 1 or 2 minutes to travel the whole distance.

Also, now, he has slowed down his dancing, and is not really following the music anymore, and she has slowed down too, (he slowed her down by mirroring her pace, and then slowing down as his hands were running up or down). (3 minutes)

While his hands are on her ass, he moves his head in, and breathes softly on her neck. He does not try to kiss her.

His hands move up or down her back slowly, while his head moves around her neck or side of neck, him breathing slowly, closely. The chicks eyes start to close. She is going into trance. (3 minutes)

He moves his head and hands down her body, (still facing her), he like crouches down, slowly, as his hands travel down to her legs, then slowly moves up again, to her ass, and he is standing again, and is breathing on her neck or back again. (3 minutes)

He now repeats the hand up or down things above from the top of this list, and the breathing a couple times. Each time he pulls her in closer. She is going way into trance now. (4 minutes)

The last time he does the up or down hands thing, he raises his hands up to her hands in the air, and lets go, but leaving his hands up. This is her cue to now do the same thing to him, and she does.

She runs her hands up or down his body slowly now, like he did to her before a few times. She clearly likes this, a smile is on her face

He turns her around (so her back faces his chest), and he does the same things again with the hands, this time from behind. she gets confused, when he tries to turn her, so he just tells her to turn around, she loses trance state He does NOT go for her tits or cunt, etc.nothing overtly sexual. She is back in trance again. (3 minutes)

He turns her around again, so they are facing each other, and he is breathing on her neck or face. Now she is mirroring him and doing the same thing, breathing on his face or neck.

This goes on a long time.he makes her wait for the kiss, and she is goes more into trance, she is just hanging on to him now.he does not rush things at all. (3 minutes)

He starts breathing more on her cheeks, face, but does not kiss there He continues until she is doing the same (2 minutes).

She is doing the same now, and their lips are breathing on each others face. This continues for what I thought is a really long time before the kiss starts (4 minutes)

Finally, they slowly move closer lips together from each others lips. The lips lock, they kiss, and keep kissing The kissing goes on for a really long time (15 -20 minutes)

Around then I leave with my chick, and don't see the rest of it (I suspect he just took her home (wink) )

Maniac's analysis. There was no talking during the whole **PU** (except where he makes her turn around), just the way he touched her got her going. Firstly, he did NOT rush things. Also, it was obvious to see her states changing when he was doing the **Kino**. He did not advance until her state was ready. This was obvious from looking at her (her eyes closing, her 'hanging' on him, her following his dance pace, and NOT the music when he slowed down.). He made sure this happened before going to the next step. She was also helping him by following his 'body rapport'. Some chicks will or won't in my experience. Also, he did nothing overtly groping or sexual, ie. He didn't kiss her neck or ears before the first kiss (not sure if this is good or bad yet.I think best to wait until she accepts you by the real kiss first, then move to those other parts)

(There's a choice to be made here - if a possibility of slight resistance can be expected, an initial neck or ear kiss is useful in slowly breaking down that resistance. If however not much resistance can be foreseen, abstaining from any kissing can really build up anticipation and pressure, so once the kiss finally takes place, it'll truly be a ride through the seven gates of heaven)

Didn't grab her ass in a groping way until the kiss or touch tits.etc. It was all very smooth and passionate looking until the kiss, without sexual groping or kissing neck or ears. That is good, because it didn't scare her.

He also took his time. the whole kino session was like 30 minutes from start to end. He was going REAL SLOW, even his dance pace didn't follow the music. very SLOW MOTION movements, as the chick dephased from the music rhythm, to his. He was very conscious too what he was doing, eyes open, looking like an engineer as he worked the chick into trance. He'd close them though when she could see his face. It was clear he had done this before and was following the cookbook.

He also made her wait for the kiss a bit, longer than I expected. It was good, he kept on touching her, or breathing really close to her, and that probably made her even more horny, making sure there would be no kiss rejection.

There you have it, from never-met to newly-wed in 30 minutes

#### 4.9.7 After the dance

Goes without saying that you won't end the dance with saying thanks and walking away. You didn't come here to wiggle a little on the dance-floor But you also won't let her do the same. After the song ends and she seems to be willing to continue dancing with you, and unless she is a kino-girl (see About dancing), just take her hand and lead her to the table of your choice, somewhere where its relatively quiet and private. If it seems like she is about to bail, take her hand and say or whisper in her ear something in the lines of I want to talk to you about something. Most probably she's gonna ask about what?, just reply I'll tell you when we sit down. From here on you can choose any of the strategies described in this guide.

### 4.10 Group tactics

#### 4.10.1 If she is with a friend or a group of friends

also known as disarming the obstacles

She is the target. The friend is the obstacle. Be it male a female, so many AFC's make the fatal mistake of ignoring the friend or obstacle when making sweet-talk with the target. An ignored obstacle is pissed and getting more pissed all the time. Undoubtedly, the target's friends have much more influence over her than you could ever exert in 5-10 minutes, which means that when the pissed obstacles will eventually start interfering with your conversation, dragging your target away (come on, we have to go home or to another place etc.), talking with your target and ignoring you, making comments and just generally breaking the mood. you're dead meat. If you were good enough to make the target interested in you, she might be able to slip you her number while her friend is already dragging her out the door. But more likely than not, in an atmosphere poisoned by the pissed presence of the obstacle, you'll never have a chance with the target.

So now what? The only option is to befriend the obstacles before engaging the target. Make the target's friends - male, female, brothers, co-workers, whatever - your best mates before you move on to working you magic with the one that really drew you to their friendly circle in the first place. Have a good time doing it, make lots of friends, shake hands, be humorous, lift everyone's spirits. Make them laugh, feel good and like you Once you're done that, you can move to working your target without having to fear anything from your new-found buddies. Who, by the way, you have already negged by paying the least amount of attention to. This has gotten her intrigued about you as she's probably accustomed to being adored everywhere she goes But not by you, so either you're accustomed to beautiful women or there's something about her that you don't like, either way, she has got to find out, she has got to make you adore her, she is so accustomed to that, why is she not paying attention to me!?, gotta step up my efforts with this guy!, hehe

One more thing - once you've disarmed the obstacle or obstacles and engaged the target, and this is critical, you need to separate her from her friend or friends. If she is with a friend, you better have a wingman to keep the obstacle busy and help in the effort of separating them. Very many girls don't like to be seen kissing or touching someone in front of others or friends. They have the issue of reputation to deal with etc. But once you're in a private place, she's free to do whatever she wants without having to think oh no, what's my friend going to think about this, is she gonna tell anyone or my boyfriend or mom? etc. Let's say you separated two friends, you're with one girl and your wingman with another girl someplace else. You and the girl have no idea what you're your wingman and her girl are doing. But that doesn't mean you can't imagine This is where it gets interesting - she's gonna think her friend is probably already making out and having all the fun, maybe even having sex already While her friend is probably thinking the same thing So being separated and not knowing what the other one is doing, both of them are much more receptive to all sorts of advances

Applied with a wingman: if your wingman and his girl seem to be getting along, tell your girl (without the other girl overhearing) that you should let those two be alone and leave. Your girl will certainly initially wonder, what you mean by that. Open her eyes with these - Are you blind or something? Can't you see what they're up to? Or do you want to watch them? Don't you know how embarrassing it is when two people want to be alone and there's someone watching?. This should make her understand and now the two of you can leave. But the beauty of this is, that you leave with your girl thinking, that her girlfriend is gonna get some in a



few minutes The girlfriend however sees the two of you leaving and can't help but think that you left so that you and your girl could go have some private fun Now that you've got both of them thinking, that the other one is going to get her brains screwed out in a few moments, neither of them wants to be left out in the cold - voila!

A simple variation of removing **obstacles** or negging the **target**, **ASF**: You see **HB** and **UG** together - dance or talk or have fun with the **UG** instead, **HB** is surprised, jealous and starts making an effort. Perfect.

Mystery, **ASF**: To get a 10 you NEED 7 and 8 girls to **PAWN**. Make them laugh and the 10 in the other group will take notice. Then enter the group and be the center. **NEG** the **target** while you address the rest of the crowd. Be so interesting that they ask YOU questions. **NEG** the ten again in front of the friends. Then once the group likes you, close in on the **target** with a mood of ok ok, I'll let you talk to me. You are appealing to her emotions. She felt bad for being left out and then you GIVE IN and make her the center of attention.

Johnny Shack: Remember: there is often some (usually ugly) sour womens liberation girl in a group, who will stuff the momentum up which is what leads to missing out on story nights. So make note of not leaving her out of the conversation. This girl can be very influential as she will pull the morality strings of the group (which is the last thing you need out there in jungle warfare). Get her interested in you and let the games begin. Make that ugly and mouthy girl of the group like you, this will allow the others to act their slutty selves.

Another example of getting a girl away from her friends by Zvi Aranoff, **SS**-list: Pardon the interruption. I'd like to tell you something and which I know you'll enjoy more in private. Believe me. (motion with your hand to the side or lead her with your open palm to the side. And then to her friends -) Excuse me ladies. I'll borrow her only for a moment (Once she's outside the flock -) .the reason I took you aside is that all your friends there are beautiful, of course. but there is something about you that absolutely stands out (besides her tits, but don't tell her that!). and I just HAD to tell you that. (Shut up until she asks or shows curiosity, then -) (give her a sincere compliment that has nothing to do with her beauty, of course, then -) and I hope you're the type of woman who can tell the difference between a pickup (gesture away) and a sincere compliment (**sp**). Give her a knowing look (which you can use later on as an anchor), and walk away! She'll run after you!

#### 4.10.2 Approaching a group of many girls

**ASF**: I think groups of around 5 girls are fairly easy to approach. I don't think you have to entertain them ALL (this is valid if they're not all talking about the same thing but are rather segmented). What I do is I pick one of them most of the time it's the one who seems the most bored and just start to chat it up When I do an approach such as this. RARELY will the other girls try to pull the girl away. Instead, it seems like it brings out the competitive spirit in the other girls and then THEY will be the ones breaking OUR conversation and not the other way around. Now the girl you approach might not be very interested in you but as long as you look like your having a good time and your not getting completely blown off. by god IF THERE IS A GIRL IN THE GROUP WHO FINDS YOU ATTRACTIVE. SHE WILL MAKE HERSELF KNOWN. She'll either give you very strong eye contact. or she'll try to join into the conversation or she'll approach you.

I guess a good rule to follow is if you disturb a conversation then you better befriend everyone that was in the conversation or they'll become an **'obstacle'**. I think that's when you end up having the other girls pulling the girls away.

#### 4.10.3 How to have her leave the group

By NightShadow. Mindlist:

I see a hottie talking to all of her friends and I want to meet her.

*(The following description is useless in this context, but it was so much fun, I just had to leave it in;)).*

She is wearing a beautiful knee high skirt or dress, her lips are ever so caringly outlined with just the right amount of lip stick to accentuate her slightly pouty lips. An angels face with a bed devils grin. Nice round firm breast, tight and shapely ass, legs that scream to be spread like butter with your hot knife of pleasure.

Now, I bet half the guys on the list are going WHAT WOULD YOU DO?, She is with friends, you don't know her and she is that hot!?!?.

I would just walk up to her and talk to her. These are the kind of women that want attention. I casually, but politely walk up to her, usually from behind (I like to wisper in her ear), lightly touch her arm and say may I talk to you for a minute?

This is SO devious! It is the ultimate BREAK STATE, yet it is so nonintrusive that she WANTS to come talk to you. Her imagination will race and she will have no idea what you want to say to her. Even if she doesn't come over there (I give them about 2 minutes, make sure you either have a friend with you or friends near you so you can walk off easily) she will see you later and just HAVE to say something to you.

This tactic works INCREDIBLY at bars, parties, clubs, parks, marriages, seminars, church, gyms (you can go workout and not look like you are waiting), work, EVERYWHERE!

#### **If she says But I can't leave my friends**

Not specifically relevant to the strategy described above, but still relevant to the general situation. If you're already alone with her in a public setting that she arrived at with her friends and now when you're ready to



move to another venue (Where are we going? - Club Myplace, you're gonna love it she comes up with the But what about my friends? line, then here's a suggestion by Johnny Shack:

In a situation like that, you will have to keep the momentum going and cannot afford to break it because once you do you might find it very hard to get things rolling again. In response to the What will happen to my friends say something in the lines of Don't worry about them. We haven't seen them for ages, so looks like they're not exactly worrying about you either. Besides, at this time of the night its every man for himself anyway Come on, let's go Now grab her hand again, lead her outside and jump into a taxi

#### **4.11 Neg Hits**

##### **4.11.1 Neghits explained**

Mystery, **ASF** (adapted):

A 10 is there surrounded by friends. She has put on this BITCH act. Is she REALLY a bitch? Unlikely. All my girlfriends were wonderful human beings - beautiful people have it easier because they are beautiful and often times have better upbringings because of it. BUT - they need to have a standard with which to uphold when all these NOBODY guys approach her. So her values are very honed and understood. When a man walks up and says, can I buy you a beer? she WILL be annoyed by this. While the guy thinks he's doing something nice for her, she gets this ALL the time. She is desensitised to this. You are the 8th guy TODAY! So she is very good at brushing all these guys off. Shit, she HAS to be she isn't going to sleep with ALL of them! So she may say NO or act annoyed and then the guy thinks she's a bitch and walks off pissed and feeling like a failure. And that seems to work. Sometimes when the girl is particularly in a feeling of control (like in a club where she is PREPARED for the barrage of men - it IS after all something that occurs so often that when it is GONE she MISSES it) she will accept the beer and then flake the guy off. Hey, the guys are stupid enough to buy her one, she might as well take it. When they take a beer from you, the girl is saying to you, I don't know you and I don't care about you. You are just another one of those typical guys and since I don't respect you, Ill take the beer from you before I snub you.

Since a 10 is so GOOD at snuffing your approach (nothing ever personal either - it is a strategy that is built over years of stupid guys approaches EVERY FUCKING DAY, she will do the same to YOU. That is why SNUFFING THEM is important. You cant INSULT them because they are used to all the hurt guys INSULTING them (ahh you are nothing but a bitch!) so this rolls off their back like water off a muskrats ass. How do you SNUFF them withOUT INSULTING them? Well, let's say she has long nails which are most likely fake. Now why do 10s dress so FINE if they don't want the attention? Because they LOVE the feeling of control sometimes. They are in a club with friends and they want to be the leader of the circle (social hierarchy in primates) and so she gets all the attention. The guys come and buy drinks for them and she gets off on knocking the guys down. Its all in a days play. Ok, so she is wearing fake nails to look even BETTER! Most guys will say, wow you are so beautiful! BORING, typical and in her mind by now (after years of the same shit) TRUE. Imagine a guy comes along and says nice nails. are they real? she will have to concede, no. acrylic. and he says (like he didn't notice it was a put down oh. (pause) well I guess they still LOOK good. Then he turns his back to her. What does this do to her? Well, he didn't treat her like shit and INSULT her. He complimented her but the result was to **target** her insecurity. She thinks, IM HOT IM BEAUTIFUL (especially in that emotional state of control as in the public) but I didn't win this guy over. IM SO GOOD at this. ILL just fix that little smear on my image that he has of me. then you continue to show disinterest in her looks as you give her a neutral topic like the Elvis script. During this her intention is to get you to become like all the other guys so she can feel in control and snuff you and you then give her another **NEG** HIT like this is that a hair piece? well, its neat what do you call this hairstyle? The waffle? Smile and look at her to show her you are sincerely being funny and not insulting. You are pleasant but disinterested in her beauty. This will intrigue her because she KNOWS guys. And this isn't normal. You must have really high taste, or be used to girls or be married or something. These questions make her CURIOUS. So this keeps happening and is known as FLIRTING. She give you little **neg** hits and these tests are qualifiers. You pass them by **neg** hitting her back. After all, you aren't like the others showing interest. But why? To get control again she says, will you buy me a drink? notice how she is trying to get you now! BUT, she only wants to sucker you in enough so she can SNUFF you. That is all she is about - this strategy is all she knows and it's not working for you so she is trying to do damage control on the situation. But at the same time she doesn't quite understand WHY you don't think you are great. After all, her nails ARE fake. You say, ahhh, that's so funny you nose moves when you speak (pointing and being cute) look there it goes again its so quaint hheeeee look (smile) She'll say, ahhh, stoppp! blush. Now she is self conscious and having her in this state is where you want her. You have with 3 **neg** hits successfully created INTEREST (curiosity) and removed her from her pedestal (removed her **bitch shield**.) You were humorous, you had a smile, you dress well, you are confident and everything she would want in a man.

You didn't take her shit. OH, and when she asked you for a beer, you said, no. I don't buy girls drinks. but you can buy ME one. You are qualifying HER now. If she buys you a beer, this is symbolic of her RESPECT for you.

If not you say, pleasure meeting you and turn your back to her again. DONT walk away, just turn your back. You are **neg** hitting them again just when they thought she was negging YOU. That is teasing each other. That is the first step to flirting. This is all textbook psychology.

A **NEG** HIT is a qualifier. The girl is FAILING to meet your high expectations. It's not an insult, just a judgement call on your part. The better looking the girl, the more aggressive you must be with using **neg** hits. A 10 can get 3 **neg** hits up front, while an 8 only 1 or 2 over a longer time. You CAN go overboard if they think you are BETTER than them You can drop the self-esteem right from under them (just like most 10s do to guys) and this isn't good. You have to get as close to the breaking point as you can without crossing the line. Once you have gotten her RIGHT THERE, you can start appreciating things about her (NEVER LOOKS). There is a mutual RESPECT now. Something most guys never get from the girl.

This is how you remove a **bitch shield**. 3 **neg** hits oughta do it within 2 or 3 minutes of neutral chat. Once it is down, you can from a mutual respect place, seduce her.

#### 4.11.2 Neghits expansion pack

- Use **negs** with 9s and preferably 10s only. Don't use a **neg** on a 7 or 8. The 7s and 8s know what they are - cute, sweet, pretty etc - but not drop-dead beautiful. Their confidence in their own beauty is only fairly high and it could easily be destroyed by a **neg**. Shaking their confidence too much and making them self-conscious could quite easily make them hate you instead of wanting to be down with you - and that's not what you want The 9s and 10s however KNOW they are beautiful - they've been told so all their lives; and then there's always the mirror to confirm that So your **neg** will confuse and intrigue them and maybe even shake their confidence a little bit, but only enough for them to fall from the clouds (which is where many 9s and 10s spend much of their time to the ground (which is where you are waiting for them Compare that to falling from the ground into a deep hole, which could easily happen to a 7 or 8 should you happen to **neg** her, and you'll see, why you should be very discriminative in your use of the **neg**.
- The **neg** hit might backfire with a 9 or even a 10, if you use it when she's really down - in a self-defeating, self-conscious, I'm probably just a 7 or a even 6 mood Be sensitive to her mood and if, for whatever reason, she seems to be really suffering, forget the **neg**. Be the one to bring her out of her darkness, treat her like a 6 or a 7 that she feels she is at the moment, meaning cheer her up and compliment her without any embedded **negs**, but be careful - the 9 or 10 in her is only in suspended mode and once you re-activate it, unless you change to humorous negging right away, you'll end up being another supplicating chump - you get a hug and then she walks away to find herself a MAN.
- When you **neg**, ALWAYS present it as a compliment - be charming, friendly, positive, earnest and sincere in your compliment If you present your **neg** as a deliberate insult you come off as a jerk (which however is a good excuse to apologise by giving her a hug and a kiss to make up for your insult. Being a jerk of course could be a turn-on for some girls, but more often than not, it is a turn-off. Which doesn't mean that being a nice guy is your goal, in fact that's usually an even bigger turn-off. When you fall into the nice and eventually the Let's Just Be Friends zone, you'll wish you would have fallen into the jerk zone, that way you would at least have had some sort of a chance of doing a comeback. So avoid being a jerk or a nice guy - just take the best of both worlds and **neg** her with a compliment

**Example 1 of using a neghit ASF:** When you see a **HB** and she snuffs you tell her you think her dress is very nice (something she has heard before) and then tell her you remember seeing her at a club before and she was wearing the same dress. It IS nice though. Whether or not you ever saw her before, you can ASSUME she HAS been social before and that she was wearing the dress before. This deflates her INSTANTLY and puts you in control.

**Example 2 of using a neghit Guy:** What do you do? Gal: Oh, I'm a model. Guy: Oh yeah, your hair looks kinda nice or Oh, like a hand model or something?

**Example 3 of using a neghit Mystery:** If you are in a bar and you approach a girl, she basically KNOWS you want to fuck her. You have to somehow convey that you didn't come for sex but because you are talkative about some even MORE interesting than HER. The only thing from you that can make a 10 NOTICE you is if you show her she doesn't matter to you in the slightest that is a **NEG**

**Negging before kissing.** Daniel, **ASF:** I love the little gem by mystery where he said to **neg** a girl before kissing her, now how devious is that? You make her feel self conscious and then you relieve the very feelings you caused

**Examples of negging a beauty.** (Only for use with 10s or 9s who simply HAVE to know they ARE beautiful, any less beautiful girls can easily be destroyed by these!) After you've negged her looks in some manner, follow up with:

You are really interesting, or at least you're not THAT ugly.

No really, I've seen uglier girls

Well, at least you should be lucky to have a good body (to compensate for whatever it was you negged)

### **More neghits**

You are nearly as tall as me. I like tall girls (LIFT). Are those heels 4 or 5 inches (DROP)?

You blink alot

Your nose wiggles when you talk

Weren't you wearing this dress the last time you were here?

Excuse me may I finish my sentence first?

Oooh Sick You just spit on me! (when the girl is talking to you).

Your hair looks kinda nice

**Challenge** Mystery, **ASF**: YOU: I don't think we should get to know each other.

HER: Why?

YOU: I think you are just too much of a NICE GIRL for me.

HER: (whatever, it doesn't matter because she will try for you now)

## **4.12 Eliciting Values**

### **4.12.1 Eliciting values explained**

**Introduction.** The point of eliciting values is to find out what she wants in and from a man and then turn into that man of her dreams by providing her with it. But don't be fooled, if she says she wants her man to be tall and financially secure, you're not going to the doctor to get implants for your legs or rob a bank. What she gave you were means values, which means that tall in itself does nothing for her - what matters to her is how a tall man by her side makes her feel. And this is the key - for each means value you need to find out the ends value, which is what she really wants. Let's take the example of a tall man. Asking her and how does a tall man make you feel? might reveal that it makes her feel secure and protected! Aha! That's what she really wants! She wants to feel protected and secure, not a tall man per se. In practice, she'll reject a tall man that doesn't make her feel protected and secure right away, whereas you, who you might not be tall at all but can make her feel secure and protected, have just elicited your way to her pants

**Means Values vs Ends Values.** Know how she recognises means values and what they mean to her (honest, kind and respectful in this example). Jake Thomson, **ASF**: You learned what qualities she likes in a man - means values. Go for the ends values. Means values aren't worth as much as you think. Find out what emotions she experiences by being with someone who is honest. Repeat for kind, repeat for respectful. Secondly, find out how she knows someone is honest, kind, and respectful. She gave you 3 nominalizations that have a specific meaning to her, but NOBODY else. On the face of it, you've got no fucking clue what the hell she's talking about. If you hallucinate that you understand what honest, kind and respectful means to her, you've got a better chance of eating a can of beans and farting your way to the moon.

**Ends Values = Desired State.** A post by Mr Happy, **ASF**: For the benefit of those who are confused about eliciting values, here is better terminology: You want to find out a chick's DESIRED STATES and TRANCE WORDS.

**Me:** So, what is important to you in a relationship?

**Her:** Well I like tall guys. (Means Value)

**Me:** nod And what feeling does that allow you to experience when you are with a tall guy?

**Her:** Well it makes me feel safe and protected (Ends Value aka Desired State)

I think that the term DESIRED STATE is more clear and accurate than Ends Value. You want to discover which states that she likes to feel, so that you can create those states in her. In the above example, it doesn't really matter at all if you are tall, as long as you can make her feel safe and protected. So run a pattern that creates those feelings in her mind. (Of course this is done by naming the state and then describing its process you guys know that already, right?). Note a few common states that normally are important for every woman are comfort and safety, emotional connection, then horniness. If you only get the first part, you are a friend. If you get the second part (connection) then she will probably do the third part herself.

The important part is NOT what she says she wants (tall men, rich men, etc.). The important part is the FEELING that she experiences when she is around (tall men, rich men, etc). As long as you can discover the feelings that are important to her, and create them in her mind, she will associate those feelings with YOU.

An excerpt of Don Diebel's advice on not to talk about yourself but her: By talking about her, you learn more about her which will be valuable to you in planning a strategy. Also, it is a subject she will be comfortable with. By not talking about yourself, you let your image speak for itself. And don't forget, the less women know about you, the more women want to know about you. Be a man of mystery.

But only as long as you don't know, what she wants in a man. As soon as you have that (you just didn't let her speak about herself while letting your thoughts wander, you also listened intently, right?, become that man.

(Taken from Sweep women off their feet Do not try to create a market for your product just because you think it's a great product. Find a product that the market demands and you will be successful. Fill a need and you can't go wrong.

NYC, **ASF**: (Eliciting values so as to really make her think and fetch those answers from deep within her) is one of the major differences that will get you noticed. MOST guys go so did you have both of your parents and she says no and they say look there's a movie playing wanna go?. They ask questions that don't tell them ANYTHING about the chick and then ask them out in effect, they are fucking up their FLUFFING because they are NOT distinguishing her from any other chick, although they THINK they are.

Learning about her as a person is much deeper than light questioning, and the thing that turns chicks on the most is when they BELIEVE that you are into them because of some UNIQUENESS that they have. Something you see in them ONLY that you don't see in other women and which makes them extremely attractive to you. They think that men that are attracted ONLY to bodies are dogs, etc. By your deeper questioning, you separate yourself from the other suitors because you make them THINK. You make them DIG for answers. They FEEL differently after baring their soul to you than after telling you where they got their hair done and how much it cost.

NYC, **ASF**: I go back to childhood and find out what they missed out on or wanted. I find out what they want now and what they desire for their futures. I cover EVERYTHING then I CRAFT the VESSEL I need to get into her. I make MYSELF a COMBINATION of all the things that she doesn't know she craves. There is NO RESISTANCE to this. NONE! She can't resist because all she knows is that I am talking about some abstract ideas or another woman and it strikes a chord within her that's exactly how I want to be treated by a man that's exactly what I want in a man Is this guy for real? what she doesn't know is that she TOLD ME HOW TO SEDUCE HER and I have embedded this knowledge inside my language and STAY ON COURSE. I bombard her with good feelings and ALWAYS avoid bad feelings. When I do my work, I may not get laid, but I am NEVER FORGOTTEN!

**Everyone has a need.** Find and fill that need, an explanation by Jobet Claudio, Mindlist:

In my observation, the mere adoption of the following rules can supercharge your own attitude towards being a great seducer.

Rule 1. People, all people, to include supercelebrities and ultra-gorgeous women, have desires. That seems like stating the obvious, but think about it. Even Bill Gates I bet, wishes he could do something different, that would fulfill him and he's not getting it now. He aches for something craves for something That's the same with ultra-gorgeous women, or women in general. They may have an army of suitors, they may be sleeping on the finest velvet sheets, etc etc. But believe me, all people, gorgeous women included, ache for something. They have a heartfelt desire for something. That something may vary from adventure to feeling freedom, to feeling respected (for the less secure ones), to feeling pampered, to feeling like a little girl again. It can be a large variety of things. But make no mistake about it. Everyone aches for something.

Rule 2. And this is cliché. Find out what it is. Be sensitive. You can pick this up in the small cues that she leaks out. Be intelligent in structuring your questions to be such that you can uncover nice pieces of data: What you're looking for is something that she always wanted that she's not getting right now, something she aches for, but can't have due to some life circumstance or something like that. It can be anything. Once you know what it is, you can either you fill the void by using language patterns or transform yourself into the person that fits that criteria or desire or longing.

Rule 3. Fill that void that you've found. Use linguistic patterns to achieve this. If she talks about the need for respect, say something like what if we were living in a different dimension or a different planet and in that planet everything you see, is everything you want to see and in that place you see all the people, giving you all the respect you ever wanted now doesn't that feel nice?

Rule 4. This is cliché as well, but anchor the fulfillment of the need to (guess who?) to you! For example Isn't it nice if you could experience all of that with me, now I think it would be real grand if you could!

Keep doing that a couple of times and soon enough you'll be her perfect man.

Example: One woman I was not really seducing leaked out that she misses her father (who died long ago). I then took that tack and talked about how good it feels to be a little girl sitting on daddy's lap and embracing him, and asking for the small gifts like a pony or things like that. Goshit worked. But it would have even been better to ask her what her father was like, to ask for small cues, like how her father talked, what he used to say to her, what did he make her feel and etc etc. Then, using that information and your power of acting, subtly transform yourself into her daddy. It might seem sneaky and underhanded to use her own



desires to dangle the carrot she's always wanted but lets frame it this way - we're just finding out what can make a person happy and giving it to them.

Seducer Romancer these guys are the guys who know how to please, aim to please and live to please (though this does not imply supplication- no woman ever wanted a man she could easily control). These guys are the guys who know how to fill a need. Everyone, and I mean everyone, has a hole. Fill it. (Now did I detect some double meaning in that last statement or am I just completely corrupt?)

#### 4.12.2 Trance words explained

When you are eliciting her values or letting her describe her feelings while patterning, listen intently to what she has to say and more importantly, what words she uses to express herself.

The words she puts particular emphasis on or repeats frequently are her so-called trance words. This means that by using the very same words she uses you will be able to tap directly into her consciousness and subconscious. After all, those are the words she thinks with and is most familiar with. And hearing you use them, she feels you understand her so completely, you are like a soul-mate, and whatever you say to her is much more likely to be understood and most importantly - liked by her

A rough implementation of using trance words would be to take what she tells you and feed it back to her in a slightly different robing using her personal trance words. But when I say rough, I don't mean that its not working - the fact that it just doesn't have much style, doesn't mean that it isn't deadly effective

A more sophisticated approach would be to listen to and remember her trance words. And use them a little later And maybe in a slightly different context But the difference between this and the first method is only subtle - here you just have to use a little more imagination and have a good memory

##### An example:

**You:** If I were to ask you, what's the most important thing in a relationship, how would you describe it to me?

**Her:** I want a man who makes me feel comfortable with myself (you remember feel and comfortable)

**You:** Wouldn't it be nice if you could spend time with a man who makes you feel like you could let down your guard and just be comfortable? Whose voice sothed and at the same time stimulated you? I get the feeling that this could happen to you right now, with me.

#### 4.12.3 Calibrate the girl

Before you can start making the girl feel good, elicit and interpret her values, reflect them back to her, experience states of pleasure and hornyness etc, you have to know how to interpret her specific signs of feeling either good, bad or neutral. You can of course guess that a smile or doggy-dinner-bowl-look are good and a yawn and a frown of boredom are bad, but the signs are not always that clear. So in order for you to be able to acquire more accurate data on how the girl is reacting to each theme you bring up, question you ask or direction you go with the conversation, you shall first have to calibrate her for her reactions.

Jake Thomson, **ASF**: Find out, by asking, what she looks like when she agree's with something. Find out, by asking, what she looks like when she disagrees with something. Find out, by asking, what she looks like when she's nuetral about something.

Make a game out of it. Tell her you're practicing to be a 'psychic' and you want her to help you. Ask her to think of something she whole heartedly, enthusiastically, and strongly agrees with. It's irrelevant if she tells you what it is, matter of fact, it's better if she keeps it to herself. Then ask her to think of something she feels nuetral about. Observe what she does. Repeat this cycle two more times. Then have her think of something she wholeheartedly, enthusiastically, and strongly disagrees with. Go to neutral, and repeat two more times.

Next, ask her to think about anything she wants, and you, based on your careful observation, will tell her if she agrees, doesn't care, or disagrees with. Play that game for a while, then drop it, and move on to something else for a while.

According to Jake Thomson, you should use this to progress to doing a cold-reading of her palm (that is without any knowledge of palmistry) or analyze her handwriting etc by feeding her something and either deepening it if she shows signs of agreement with it or moving on to something else is she is showing signs of disagreement. But the principles of calibration described are applicable on a far larger scale than just as prep-work for a gimmick.

NYC, **ASF**: I would always wonder why guys would ask how do you know when she because in general, I ALWAYS KNOW! The reason I know is I basically give them a lie detector test before **sarging** them. What I mean is that I deliberately, yet naturally in the course of conversation say things that I KNOW will push them in a direction.

I notice how they are normally then when they mention their pet cat or something, I might say did your cat ever get hurt? and watch her face change and her body change when she considers her cat getting hurt. Then I might say Does your cat wake you up in the morning? and watch her change to that too. Not those



sentences or topics in particular, but since I don't talk BULLSHIT FLUFF with chicks, I get them going in all directions before **sarging** unless it's just time for caveman **kino**

Anyway by the time I am ready to move on them, I KNOW how they react to good stuff and bad stuff. When I QUOTE to a chick about getting a blowjob from some other chick in the past, she might THINK she is not reacting to what I said, but she is going through the same changes as thinking about her cat when she considers her mouth around my dick. She is either going to have the happy reactions or the sad reactions or the I don't give a FUCK about what he just said reactions. I always know when I am moving physically closer to a girl if she WANTS me to do it, is LETTING me do it, or HATES me doing it before she even speaks. When I move toward her, she has to consider what I am coming over there to do, and it is OBVIOUS to me how she FEELS about it without her saying what she feels about it. This makes me look like a fucking CHAMPION because I seem to sense what she's feeling without her telling me. We are so in tune blah blah blah.

I think this idea is PARAMOUNT! If you can't judge what the chick is feeling basically that is pro, con or neutral you are way behind in the game.

#### 4.12.4 Eliciting values - introducing the questions

In order to accomplish eliciting values properly, you need her to provide you with her core values and in order for her to be able to do that, you need to ask the right questions. For example, you could start with:

I think its an absolutely fantastic feeling to get to know another human being. And what's really stimulating, is to learn what someone else thinks of major issues revolving around us in this world. and discovering what's important for her in life. So if I were to ask you, what do you really value and what's important to you in a relationship, what would you answer? If she replies with ends values (feeling loved, understood) - bingo! Be the one to make her feel that (by incorporating that into talk about yourself or making up a pattern about that). If she replies with means values (the means of achieving ends values - like a strong, brave man to make her feel what? you need to find out!), do some additional asking: And what does it feel like to have a relationship with such a guy?.

**ASF:** Ask questions that get her to go inside and come back with values and criteriAnswer: Questions that touch on her identity as a person. For example:

You know Debbie, most of the time we talk about surface stuff, like what we did last night at the party, or where we want to go next weekend, things like that. It's ok to talk about that stuff, and I enjoy it. I find that I get a lot more out of talking about who we are as people on a deep level, what's important to us, what we believe in, how we feel, and why. So I was wondering what's important to you in a relationship (or this class, or a friend, or.)? Then listen to what she tells you. Stick to what emotions she's experiencing and why and you'll never run out of things to talk about.

NYC: You must know who you MUST BE to fuck her. How exactly do you achieve that? It's very basic really. Instead of talking about bullshit with a chick or your porsche or your yacht or your country club membership ask her about herself.

It wouldn't however be wise to just blurt out the questions, that might sound rehearsed (an impression you want to avoid like the plague, any signs of you having rehearsed and you're toast, unless she really likes you, in which case it really doesn't matter what you do. It would probably feel more natural, if you introduced the questions in the line of a friendly, affectionate and empathic conversation. An example by Ross Jeffries:

You know, I know in a situation like this, the typical thing is for a person to ask what do you do?. And, it's not that I'm not interested in that, but I find I learn a lot more about a person when I find out what the challenges are in what they do. Because I know their are some aspects of what you do that are easy, and others are more difficult. Some are a challenge and others you can do in your sleep. With me, in my line of work it's the same thing. So, if were to ask you, what's the one aspect of what you do that's a challenge, either because you have to focus in to do it well, or you just have to focus in to get yourself motivated to do it, what would that be?

When asking the questions, NEVER start asking disconnected questions, that is questions on different topics. NYC, **ASF:** you can't get away with that at all. What you have to do is STRING your topics from TANGENTS from the original topic. Make it look like a continuous flow so that they NEVER END telling you about the first thing they started talking about.

**you:** what do you do?

**her:** blah blah working with kids

**you:** the kids must be rowdy

**her:** yes they are hard to control blah bla

**you:** I used to be like that too when I was a kid

**her:** I had the same thing happen to me.

**you:** how old were you when that happened?

**her:** I was 13 blah blah

**you:** did you live with your parents?

**her:** no, they had divorced when I was 10

**you:** damn that must have been tough on you

**her:** I learned to survive on my own

**you:** my friend had that happen to her also she likes to live alone now

**her:** me too that's why I don't have a roommate BLAH BLAH BLAH

You see how she NEVER got to change topics? You keep changing topics based on TANGENTS to the original topic and it SEEMS like you are still asking her about the first question ALTHOUGH the topic has changed like 6 times

The WRONG way to do it however is this:

**you:** what do you do?

**her:** blah blah working with kids

**you:** did you live with both of your parents until college?

**her:** no, they had divorced when I was 10

**you:** do you have any roommates?

**her:** WHAT'S WITH THE FUCKING 20 QUESTIONS?

NYC, **ASF:** You have to APPEAR genuinely interested in her life. Ask her fluff questions about her life and move into the important questions from there. She will only tell this stuff to someone that she likes, so make the connection first, then get interested in her and she will be PLEASED that someone wants to know more than if she is a 38D

Alternatively, instead of APPEARING interested, you can try BEING interested Jake Thomson, **ASF:** I have an easier time simply being genuinely interested and curious about who she is, what she feels, what she thinks and believes and why than trying to appear that way. Also keep I keep my outcome in mind, am I looking for Ms. Right? or Ms. Right-Now? I'm willing to tolerate a lot more divergence between my beliefs and her beliefs with Ms. Right-Now, than I am with Ms. Right.

If she has a different belief system than you, neither do you want to start arguing with her nor to you want to agree with her (while you really don't). There's a way to turn the situation to your advantage nevertheless. Jake Thomson, **ASF:** If we have fairly divergent beliefs, sometimes I'll ask her to try and convince me. I'll tell her something like, I hold somewhat different beliefs on that subject. I'm sure you've got excellent reasons for what you believe though. I'm curious, how did you come to those conclusions? What convinced YOU? And, if you were going to convince somebody, Debbie, how would you do it? Because what she'll almost certainly do is give me her strategy for convincing herself. As to just how that information might come in handy, I'll leave as an exercise for the reader.

Here's a simpler alternative to asking the questions - frame it as a game (see The questions game for a variation of this). Eric, Clifford's Seduction newsletter:

I say the first part of a sentence and then the chick finishes it as if it were her sentence. For example My name is (chick's name). Intersperse this with a few pacing stems like the above and rapport is easily built but here's the good part Use stems like I have an incredible connection when., I feel excited when., I am comfortable when., I feel good about. and then note the trance words. This is easier or faster than getting the chick to think of an exciting time she had recently and works like a charm. When you get STRONG responses, you can use some hypnotic techniques to amplify and anchor them. So that if it were to be I feel absolutely turned on when. I am safe, warm, and comfortable, you might just say Stop, go inside and think back to when you first felt safe, warm, and comfortable This is like a quick walk through someone's psyche without the BS getting in the way because IT'S ONLY A GAME!

#### 4.12.5 Eliciting values – the questions

Here's a sample list of questions to use to elicit her values and trance words. NYC, **ASF:**

- What she wants?
- What she likes?
- What she thinks she needs?
- What she thinks she deserves?
- What she had in the past that she wants to repeat?
- What she had in the past that she wants to avoid?
- What scares her?
- What makes her happy?
- What makes her feel sexy?

Ask the right questions, don't try to push her towards some specific state (like excitement for example), it might mean nothing to her. **ASF**: Realise that do you value excitement in your life? is a useless question compared to what do you value?

Here are some additional questions you can ask, that might be a little less value-eliciting oriented, but helpful nevertheless. They'll help you to get to know to her and should also put her in an altered state by making her dig up answers for these from deep within her consciousness and subconscious.

- What are the challenges in her line of work or what are the easy parts or what she likes or what she doesn't like about her job?
- What is the most unusual thing you've done when playing truth or dare? Hopefully she comes up with some sexual stuff
- How do your friends describe you? Use this both for value-eliciting and as prep info for palm-reading, after which you can say Let me see, whether you actually are like that as well and transition to palm-reading. See Palm-reading and Palm-reading explained for more details.
- What do you think I am like? You'll get useful feedback on how you're doing and how she perceives you
- Your first childhood memory? If its positive, anchor it, and even if its just neutral, never mind that, in her mind she sees herself as opening up to you when telling you about such stuff
- Your most pleasant or sweetest memory from school? Hopefully has something to do with a guy, anchor it If not, be more specific.
- Your first day at school? Same as with first childhood memory, but don't use it before the sweetest memory from school - it would make it too easy for her to answer well, my first day at school was it and avoid any possible romantic memories
- In what period of your life where you most popular? Have her remember the good times
- Do you remember the first time you fell seriously, completely and helplessly in love How did it happen?
- The happiest moment of your life?
- What role would you like to play in some movie?
- Achieving what goals in your life have brought you the most joy?
- How well do you know yourself?

If the answer to some question is not to your liking (what scares you? mice), elaborate on what you meant with your questions. And if there's anything you don't understand in her answer completely, specify and ask additional questions. Don't THINK you understand, be SURE you understand because that is the only way of:

- 1) making her feel completely understood by you
- 2) and completely understanding her - which is what you need in order to know how to make her feel the way she wants to feel with that special man of hers

Don't forget though, that you have to be able to introduce these questions as a natural component and continuation of your conversation with the girl. Simply asking them out of the blue will make it sound like you're interrogating her or that you've prepared and rehearsed them beforehand (insincerity!) and once that happens, you're through.

NYC, **ASF**: You can tell when a chick is affected by **kino** OR talking or thinking about something. The subjects that she doesn't react to and the **kino** that she doesn't react to don't bother with them. When you latch onto something that really phases her in the direction you want her to go, take her deeper into it by asking her more intricate questions about it that she HAS TO meta-state into the situation to access. She will have to LIVE in that moment again for a period of time. While she is in there you can make it worse for her by introducing worse scenarios than the actual outcome, or better by suggesting better outcomes or results from it.

So don't bother with the sections where they don't feel anything, but when you see them become affected, get into it as far as they'll let you. If you have done your connection and rapport, they will be GLAD to tell you that stuff and glad that you are listening to them.

DC GUY, **ASF**:

Me: Do you like living here in (whatever-the-place-is-called)?

Her: Ya, I guess.

Me: Playfully What do you like to do for fun? Do you have a lot of guys chasing you?

Her: No, not really I'm kind of picky.

Me: Really? I mean, I don't mean to sound strange or anything but what qualities do you look for in a guy?

This is where you shut up and listen

#### 4.12.6 Eliciting values – the answers

NYC, **ASF**: Do all this (asking questions, eliciting values) BEFORE telling her about yourself. Then selectively edit or FABRICATE your existence to always fit the things that she told you HERSELF are positive things and AVOID what she told you HERSELF are negative things. Some chicks like aggressive men and some like passive men that they can cuddle with and EVENTUALLY have sex with. Find out FIRST which one she wants and THEN project that image to her. What happens is that she notices that you are displaying many traits that she looks for in a sex-partner and none of the negative traits that she uses to weed guys out. She keeps thinking about this and reinforces it in her own mind and decides that you are right for her to fuck. In this situation, how you REALLY FEEL is irrelevant. You are tailoring your personality to her tastes in order to BE THAT MAN that she wants to fuck and she will see it in you and your job will be much easier than if you explained your true nature to her and took the pot luck chance that she likes ANY of your real traits. The point of that is you need to separate yourself from other guys talking about bullshit. Chicks hear the same thing all the time. If you can demonstrate that you are interesting and unique, she will WANT to be in touch with you and WANT you to call her. If you don't convey value to her (making her laugh, making her feel sexy, etc.) there is no reason to believe that she will give you her number when you leave.

Her favourite pastimes and hobbies can also be useful. **ASF**: You found out something she likes to do, i.e. jetski. Again this is a means value. Find out what emotional state jetskiing generates for her. That way when you spontaneously generate patterns, you can tailor them to the specific emotional states SHE wants to experience.

Don't forget what you're supposed to do with the values you elicited. **ASF**: It's one thing to ask a girl questions about herself and elicit her values. It's another to act like a tourist in her reality. I used to get involved with girls lives and be like Wow, that's AWESOME! about everything they did in their lives. Fuck that. When a guy does that, a girl thinks he has no life of his own if he's so impressed with hers. Seems like the value-eliciting has not been put to good use. You could of course either show her your world as well or just not be that damn impressed with hers, but preferably you should be doing what you're supposed to be doing with the values you elicited - you've found out the states that are important to her, now make her FEEL those specific states.

Besides finding out and making her feel the states shel likes to feel, you also have to be able to represent the traits and values she finds important. NYC, **ASF**: They always come up with TRAITS, not specific things. What they TELL ME they want is easily demonstrated to them through stories, and I don't have to tell them ANYTHING directly. I would never say I love cats myself too, I would tell them a story IN WHICH I demonstrated that I like cats. I let her derive who I am by telling her a story based on what she wants to hear in the first place.

#### 4.12.7 The perfect relationship

A simple value-eliciting scheme (from an unknown source):

**You**: What's important to you in a relationship? A relationship, not qualities in a person

**Her**: Well x1

**You**: Yeah that's really important to me too. How do you know when you have x1?

**Her**: x (talking about x1..

**You**: I agree that's a powerful one. Well, what else is important to you in a relationship?

**Her**: x2

**You**: Yeah x (talking about x2..

**Her**: x (talking about x2..

**You**: Wowthat would be great to be with someone like that. Well, what else is = important to you in a relationship?

**Her**: x3

**You**: Yeah x (talking about x3..

**Her**: x (talking about x3..

Step 2

**You**: Of those three values - x1, x2, x3 - which is the most important? Which would you absolutely have to have?

**Her**: Well xn (n being either 1, 2 or 3.

**You**: Well I could see that. Of the other two, which is most important?

**Her**: xn (n being either 1, 2 or 3.

Step 3

About an hour+ later:

**You**: You knowI've been thinking that maybe we've really got the start of something beautiful here. And I think it's something based on (x1, x2, and x3 in order of her preference she provided in step 2..

She will go into a pleasure state, at the peak touch her and say:

**You**: Can you FEEL THAT would be a really wonderful thing to experience?

## 4.13 GM Style

### 4.13.1 GM style explained

Contributed to **ASF** by Nathan Szilard, this is the description of the technique used by a **PUA** acquaintance of his nick-named Grand Master Flash's. Hence the name **GM** technique. The key here is smutty sex jokes and continuous humorous sex-talk with keen attention to how the girl reacts, so as to forestall any negative reactions (and you can be sure, there will be plenty in the beginning! by saying just kidding, giving an apologetic hug to the girl etc. The reasoning here is this, that if the girl has no chance to express her negative comments about sex-jokes and -comments, this translates in her subconsciousness to agreeing and accepting what is being said. The defences will eventually go down, she has to imagine all the sex-jokes in her mind in order to understand them, and although she might be disgusted or repelled about them in the first place, she won't be able to express her negativism, her mind is bombarded with more sexual references, she just keeps imagining and before she knows it, nature kicks in and she's getting horny. Simple But potentially dangerous as hell - you really need to be in your element with all the sex jokes and keep just kidding in time not to get slapped in the beginning etc. otherwise you could fail miserably.

Nathan Szilard on **GM** Flash and his technique, **ASF**: That's his aggressive style. Basically he told them he wanted to fuck from the beginning. He had the attitude that he could satisfy them sexually. He had the confidence that says he does this all the time. He was in their face. He was making them excited. He was stimulating them like they are not USED TO being stimulated. If they were going to resist, they would have resisted when he first told them what he wanted from them. There is the INCORRECT assumption that chicks don't like DICK! They love it and they want it! The problem is they want it from the guys they want it from. All he has to do is offer them the SECOND best thing sexual satisfaction as opposed to sex with a man they WANT! He doesn't even have to satisfy them. It's too late by the time he's fucking them! All he has to do is make them BELIEVE that if they get with him he is going to fuck them WELL! They couldn't resist because at some point they became HORNY and wanted that RELEASE!

### 4.13.2 GM style lines

Nathan Szilard, **ASF**:

- If you buy me a drink, you might get lucky tonight
- I can't please every girl but I'll give you a chance tonight
- Women are lining up to be with me
- It's tough to be such a sex symbol
- Aren't you going to get too horny if I sit next to you?
- I'm organising an orgy for my friend's birthday. Wanna come?
- I like you because you're intelligent (gesture over her breasts). I like myself because I'm intelligent too (gesture over your dick). (once **GM** even later got a phone-call where the girl said she wanted to show him her intelligence)
- If you're nice enough I will lick you.
- How does it feel like to be with (one or two) handsome blokes?
- My friend's jealous because mine is bigger.
- Look, we have to go (to her place) now because I have a date in 2 hours. No we can't go to my place because I have a friend sleeping there.
- I love myself so much I can't leave myself alone.
- I wish I could split myself in 5 (mes) so that I could please all the women.
- I have to go to the hospital tomorrow - What for? - To get an operation, (pointing down) mine's too big
- Do you know how I can have a 24 cm or 11 inch dick? ? When I fold it in half
- Are your hands clean? - Yeah - Ok, could you hold my dick for me while I'm peeing?
- You know, that really bothers me, all those girls and guys going after me, and they're only interested because of it, you know, I want to be appreciated for who I am, not for just my HUGE penis.
- I shouldn't talk about that, I don't want you to be incredibly turned on I don't want you to make a mental picture of a huuuuuuuuuuuge throbbing tasty penis. (Nathan: Her eyes were glowing - you could tell what she had in mind!)
- It's not possible to be cute without being picked up sometimes I wish I wasn't so cute (Nathan: One of the most important aspects of the **GM** technique is REVERSING ROLES)
- Me: Do you wake up early in the morning?. Her: No, not really. Me: Good, I don't like to be waken up;).



Whenever they don't react positively enough, you say:

- Hide your joy or pleasure!
- Last time I saw someone as excited as you, she was in a coma!
- If you don't like cute guys, just tell me! (Most of the time the reply will be no, no, we do like cute guys! This question reframes their possible dislike of you into a dislike of cute guys in general, which however they want to deny, thus being forced to confess, that they actually do like you. Tricky eh?)

Nathan Szilard, **ASF**: OKAY ONE IMPORTANT THING: you'd think that he gets blown off every time he says something that stupid, right? YES HE SHOULD! He would IF he didn't say JUST KIDDING before she has a chance to reply. Psychologically speaking, since she does not have the time to reply negatively, she's somewhat agreeing. It's rather obvious when you see it happening. If she starts replying negatively, he cuts her down by saying, yeah I like to say stupid things, life's too short not to have fun or I like to act like a little kid - I am a kid. And then he continues with what he started with One other thing he uses to go **kino** fast and often is insulting the girl and then apologising right away by kissing and hugging

A possible explanation of why the **GM** style actually works, Nathan Szilard: You don't get rejected as you would expect - when you think about it, to reject something, you have to know what it is. When you've heard one particular line a thousand times, you know what it means, what it is, what it aims at When **GM** approaches she's here, wondering what the fuck is going on it's so outrageous, she can't react in a predetermined way.

From someone who tried the **GM** technique just to test it, **ASF**: It was at the point I was feeling a little guilty because one was a real sweetheart and I just wanted to fall back to being nice and letting her talk about her boyfriend - but when I did - I could instantly see it was a mistake so I'd come off with I gotta get an operation tomorrow and she'd come back with a You're so bad and hitting me It was easy and she made sure to give me her phone number! I didn't even ask! This experiment tells me to memorise every one of these lines. They are killer! Pure gold! These are powerful jokes. Funny how the one who gave me her phone number kept saying she loved a sense of humour. I thought the jokes weren't funny at all. I was just mouthing words and she was laughing. I couldn't believe it. The other one had to go but she fell right into talking about sex. WOW!"

Nathan Szilard, **ASF**: An idea to go beyond **GM** style: describing the woman as a slut. Instead of telling her you are beautiful as an **AFC** does, describe her as if she was doing something overtly and consciously sexual.

See where I'm going to?

What I learnt from **GM**, well and from textbook psychology - you can get people to form an opinion about themselves. Let that opinion be that she is a slut.

The word slut in this context is a highly sexual and constantly horny female (not a prostitute).

Doing a pick-up on the street **GM**-style (suggested by Nathan Szilard, **ASF**). You have eye-contact with a woman on the street, she passes, and when you turn back, make sure she hears this: Hey! What does this mean? You ogle at me and you don't even stop to talk to me? I'm not a sex object! She'll probably be standing there, looking back at you and feeling stunned, now go approach, introduce yourself, act all hurt for being taken as only a sex object, offer her to chance to make it up to you by having the two of you getting to know each other over a cup of coffee etc

#### 4.13.3 GM style expansion pack

**Opening lines** - all the bad opening lines might actually be good with the **GM** style

**The cold approach** - welcome to the stone-age

**Use sexual talk to get her horny** - and use third person speech if you want to be safe

**Bad jokes** - same as with opening lines, these could actually help you

#### 4.14 Sexual talk

##### 4.14.1 Talking about sex

A few words of advice - don't ever start a conversation with a girl with sex, sexual innuendoes etc (there's an exception to this though, see the **GM** technique which expressly oozes and drips of sexual innuendoes with the false pretence of being humorous and just kidding. Don't misunderstand it though, the emphasis is on the word start.

It's just like with patterns - if you start a conversation with a pattern, you'll just sound embarrassingly lame. And if you start the conversation with sexual innuendoes, you might never get a chance to continue the conversation. Unless you use the **GM** technique to harvest for girls directly, blatantly and shamelessly

interested in sex, you'd better not take any aspects of the **GM** technique out of context to use as openers. Unless of course you are playing the Crash and Burn game

Steamy topics of discussion are fine, once you've established rapport with a girl, the conversation has been going smooth, her body-language shows interest etc, she's past being comfortable with you, is already into intrigue and maybe even starting to feel a little horny Introduce sex, watch her reactions, be sensitive yet bold. Use quotes (my friend Katie once told me about how he had a quick-fuck from a boy he hardly knew, you can safely get quite graphic using quotes and she can safely get horny because you're not talking about yourself or her But once again, try not to start the conversation with sexual innuendoes, it can be a major turn-off for a girl.

Mystery suggests to avoid sex-talk completely (she deals primarily with the 9-s and 10-s though. Mystery: Bringing up sex shows its on your mind and if you were truly a guy who gets girls you wouldn't think about it then. No sex comments. No sex jokes. Go **KINO** but don't talk sex.

Clifford, Clifford's Seduction Newsletter: One thing I have noticed is that a lot of women will kind of recoil when you say something a bit too sexual and then, if you pursue it with no apologies, they spring back very positively about the comment. It doesn't happen all the time, and certainly depends on the comment itself, but many women do respond to sexual comments after an initial, what shall we call it, politically correct reaction.

#### 4.14.2 Use sexual stories to get her horny

Use personal experience or fantasy stories to get her horny. **ASF**: Never use stories DIRECTLY INVOLVING the girl you're with. QUOTE about what you did to other chicks or what you want to do to other chicks or ask her about what she has done or would like to do with other guys. You can use this even in every-day discussions by elaborating at the right time and in the right direction A variation: get her in a private place, and feed her with fantasies, increasingly sexual, in a hypnotic way, until she can't stand it anymore and will rape you A journalist discussing **SS**, Playboy, July'98: I had a friend in college whose success with women was mind-boggling, given his Napoleonic stature and receding hairline. I remember my college friend playfully turning every conversation with a girl, no matter where she would try to steer it, into something with sexual undertones. He'd get her thinking about sex, and pretty soon she was thinking about having sex with him. Remember that steering the conversation into something with sexual undertones doesn't even necessarily have to mean talking explicitly about sex, see The Discovery Channel pattern for an example of this. Talking about something innocent but inserting the words penetrate, come inside, hard, surrender into the conversation might do the trick just as well. Whether to use covert (**SS** and patterns) or overt (**GM** style) conversation is not always easy to decide, the best advice I can give concerning this is just to experiment and develop an intuition

An example of a combination of a cold approach, quoting, stacking realities and using fantasy stories. **ASF**: I know this guy named Vincent, he was telling me about a woman friend of his. She said that she was standing by herself in a bar one time when this guy walks up to her, looks her dead in the eyes and said, I would like to fuck you. Would you like to fuck me? and then just stands there. She said she nearly dropped her drink, but then she started thinking about it and began feeling that heat building up in her body. You know how you feel when you start to get really aroused? All wet and excited? She didn't miss a beat and started playing right back at him. She said, I'd want you to go down on me first

Anyway use your exquisite language skills to tell her exactly what you'd like to do to her and have Vincent's friend tell it to her. I mean it's not like YOU'RE telling her you want to eat her out and fuck her brains loose or anything

An example of a line to use in a conversation. When was the last time you had an orgasm? I really think you need to find a guy right now and let him bend you over the bathroom sink and let him have his way with you.

(Taken from Sweep women off their feet Most women love the romantic and emotional stuff, while others are not necessarily interested in a relationship of any kind but would really enjoy a good session of hot and wild session of unforgettable sex, no strings attached.

So how do you begin to talk about that kind of low down and dirty sex? Well, if you see that she doesn't respond to relationship type conversation, move away from it. Offer a different perspective. You can either describe other couples that you know that are not communicating like they should and how much of a hassle it can be to be in a loveless relationship and so on.

So what's the alternative? It doesn't have to be your own opinion but you can mention how much of a hassle free a purely sexual experience can be between two horny people. They can share all their fantasies without fear of being judged by a loved one and threatened with a break-up, they are free to experience many things that might be viewed as taboo by people in a serious relationship etc. You can talk about how easy it is to arrange something and see it through when it comes to nothing but physical pleasure. You can say how both men and women can experiment with their sexual urges and curiosities without any

relationship insecurities or jealousy. You can give examples of other couples that you know where the woman always fantasized about being with another woman but the husband was scared that she might leave him for a lesbian. In a purely physical relationship, it's all about what makes us feel good, it's all about exploring fantasies and feeling comfortable with who we are as we are.

If you've hit the **target**, she will agree with you and feel a connection between the two of you because she will feel you are both the same. At that point you can ask her about her favorite position or her favourite fantasies that she was never able to talk about or act on in a closed and conventional relationship. You can tell her about some mild fantasies of yours and direct the conversation to how wonderful it feels to be able to express yourselves in this way. You can even mention how talking about this kind of stuff is making you hot right there and then probe to see if she feels the same way. You can joke about the two of you trying to seduce another person together for a possible threesome and more depending on the fantasies she already told you about. If everything clicks you will know because if you don't go for the close, she will.

#### 4.14.3 The ideal guy routine

NYC, **ASF**: If I can't get her to be interested in me, I go into the the ideal guy routine. Since she thinks I'm helping her to find what she wants, she greedily, hungrily describes her dream guy. Then I get her to describe what he's wearing, how his hair looks, how his voice is, what he says to her, how his chest feels, how she feels in his arms I just ask her the right questions to get her meta-stating ABOUT someone that makes her feel the way she likes to feel in order to fuck. She thinks about and experiences the feelings, but WHO is she talking to? ME. Basically she gets confused and thinks she is feeling that way about me when she is actually feeling that way about some other guy. If she likes HIM, but is talking to YOU, it probably means she doesn't have the GUTS to approach him fearing a rejection. You can get her to think about him all night if you want, and he'll remain a living fantasy to her. Meanwhile she is getting horny in general AND you are the one making her feel the way she does. Just by being with you and seeing you and hearing you and touching you, she gets these feelings basically she transfers what she WANTS from the guy over to you.

The other benefit of this style is that girls will admit their horny behaviour when you are NOT talking about yourself and you ARE talking about some movie star or something for instance:

**Me**: what would you do if Keanu walked in here right now?

**Her**: I would seduce him any way I can

**Me**: what would you do to seduce Keanu?

Next, she spills the beans about what she would do to convince a man she REALLY WANTS to be with her. Getting all hot and bothered along the way of course And since you're in the vicinity.

#### 4.14.4 Presuppositions and other mind-tricks

(based on Ross Jeffries' [newsletters](#))

##### **Presuppositions**

Presuppositions are some of the most widely used mind-tricks in making it easier for the girl to realise, what it is that she really wants (and then go with the flow. They shift attention from something (seemingly) unimportant as it has somehow already been agreed upon to the (seemingly) important as it needs yet to be decided upon. In order to understand the question and answer it (would you like tea or coffee?) she has to accept the presupposition that accompanies the question (.before we go to my place.

- Would you like (something to drink) before (I take you home)?
- Would you like (another coke or whiskey) before (I take you home or we go to your place or we go to my place)?

Presuppositions can also be used in ordinary sentences to help her decide. or rather, decide for her If you'd like to take a shower together with her after spending the night together, instead of asking Wanna take a shower? How about. um. we. together. um say I'll ready the shower for us.

Here are a few more examples of how a simple sentence can help a girl sway towards the right decision .or simply not leave her with much choice Use these to construct your own decision-swayers.

##### **Binds of comparable alternatives**

- So do you want to meet me again tomorrow over lunch, or over coffee? (keep talking!) e.g. Either way, the most important thing is that we can carry on this conversation. Sound good to you?
- So do you want to dance now, or wait until the next slow? (keep talking!) You're looking as if YOU CAN'T WAIT to dance now. Let's go!?

##### **Cause and Effect**

- You won't get the most out of the music just thinking about it, since the best way to experience it is to dance with me.
- As you sit there, you know you have to dance before the night is out. Come

### **Resistance-breaking patterns**

Two mini-patterns using time distortion, binds of comparable alternatives and humour to break a girl's resistance to getting together with you:

- Won't it be great AFTER we've gone out and laughed and felt really comfortable together? Then you can just look back at it all, smile that smile of satisfaction, and think to yourself: that was one of the best times, I've ever had!
- I don't know, when we go out, whether it will be a wonderfully fun adventure or just an incredibly enjoyable good time, but it sure will feel great to laugh that much, won't it?

An example of using a combination of the above techniques and thought binding:

**You:** You know, I can tell you are a woman with great taste!

**Her:** How do you know?

**You:** Because you laugh at what I say. And the more you laugh, the more you'll recognise just how attractive you find that and the more you'll look forward to being with someone just like that or the more you'll LOOK FORWARD to having the best time when we go out!

**Her:** (laughter)

**You:** Seejust like that

**You:** Seriouslyhaven't you ever met someone, and you just knew you were going to like this person (point to yourself), cause you could just STOP, and IMAGINE BEING TOGETHER, feeling totally comfortable, and absolutely connected, for all the right reasons?

**She:** Yeah

**You:** Well, see? So, as you think about it like that then just keep chatting, transition to IC pattern, whatever.

An example of a presupposition by Vampire2727, **ASF**: After finding out what the girl likes to do, talk with the assumption that you're going to do it: Well, when we're doing (this and this) together, it would be better if (something and something).

## **4.15 Long distance seduction**

### **4.15.1 Become your own friend for her**

**Introduction to long-distance seduction** Although this guide has so far pretty much avoided the topic of long-distance seductions as it is the belief of the author that the ability to perform on the field is what ultimately makes or brakes a seducer, such techniques are important tools for many nevertheless. The ability to perform long-distance becomes handy mostly due to various time or space constraints when you can not have face-to-face interactions, but as an added bonus it can sometimes even prove to be more efficient than a direct approach could or would have been (don't count on it though, just keep it in mind when forced to go long-distance to keep you in good spirits. Actually, most of the suggestions in this guide can actually be incorporated into a long-distance seduction without too much hassle anyway, but in addition to that you'll find a few more long-distance specific techniques in this section of the guide.

#### **Become your own friend for her**

By Kent Klorm Sayre, Mindlist:

Hi all! I've got a technique for you that helps get the initial response when responding to email personal ads. I designed it for my friend and then realized that one person could use it. Essentially, I answer a woman's personal ad on behalf of my friend. As we all know, someone speaking highly of you is of course more persuasive than you tooting your own horn. Here's an example message I've been sending on behalf of my friend and he's been getting a good number of responses.

EXAMPLE

MESSAGE

Hi there. I'm responding to your AOL profile on behalf of my friend Mark. I hear him saying about the women he dates and the games that they play and how he has had enough of it. He's looking for an honest, no-games-playing woman who likes to have fun. So, being his good friend, I thought I'd do him this favor of replying because you seem like you'd be a good match for him.

Now stop for a moment, as you sit there, looking at the screen, reading my message, and imagine what it would be like to enjoy yourself out with a guy who is intelligent, funny, good-looking, athletic, educated, and financially successful. While you imagine that guy, you might become aware that the guy I'm having you imagine is my friend Mark. Naturally, you might now wonder how you can contact him. And that's why I'm

here. When you email Mark, tell him his good friend Kent said you two appear to be an obvious match. His email is mark436-@yahoo.com

warmly,

Kent

END MESSAGE

Now, you may be asking yourself now, how easily can this technique be adapted to one person acting alone? Well, the short answer is - very easily. All you need to do is be your own friend. Sign up for another email account, preferably at a different email service provider (e.g., hotmail) and then send mail as your friend for yourself.

#### 4.15.2 Patterning over the phone

Ross Jeffries: The phone is an incredible way to do patterns because women feel they aren't being observed and therefore can be a lot stronger in their responses.

The consensus of using the phone as a seduction device is divided. Most agree, that if you lack any patterning skills, the phone is the kiss of death. Agree on a meeting, agree on her enthusiastic greeting of you once the two of you meet (see Closing), if she seems to want to have a chit-chat with you, talk to her a little using a low, confident, seductive voice (and smile while you do it, she'll hear that, but generally - just get off the phone as fast as you can!

On the other hand, the phone has been used to great effect to do patterning. There have even been various reports of being able to make women orgasm without letting them touch themselves just by describing various states to them over the phone. The women, by the way, were usually even more shocked than the men running patterns on them - neither had previously thought such a thing to be even possible

But I would still suggest to use the phone only in case you feel some resistance on her part to meet you in person (which might happen if she has never met you in person before, for example a girl you met and seduced online or just a friend of a friend or if she for some other reason is disinclined to meet you in person right away). Because there is a world of difference between hearing her sigh longingly over the phone or having her sit next to you, holding your hands and wetting her lips

Ross

Jeffries:

**You:** (after some fluff talk) In fact, I don't know if you can recognise that with each little giggle with each breath you take with each beat of your heart you're growing more intrigued, but anyway just setting aside whatever pictures just keep popping into your mind when I say that how are you doing today?

#### 4.15.3 Nickname-tease

A woman's curiosity is a wonderful tool. You can use it anyway you like, but here is an example of an excellent use of it. What you do, is you let her know, that you've just thought of a wonderful nick-name for her. Leave a message on her answering-machine or send her an e-mail. Her intrigue and curiosity towards you will skyrocket and for example if she hasn't been returning your calls or e-mails for a week, you can expect a call or a mail in half an hour, I'm serious This is also a wonderful way to kick-start a new relationship. Then of course, when she contacts you, don't tell her the nickname (and by god, don't tell her you were only tricking her, let her beg for it, let her fry in her own curiosity. And whatever you do, don't give away the nickname over the phone or through an e-mail, say it is too personal for that, get her to meet Now it's your call, when exactly you're going to tell her the nickname, but don't do it a minute too soon because (now don't be surprised! she might be willing to make out with you and even end up in bed with you just to find out her nickname During all this, it helps, if you actually really do have a nickname for her And if it is sweet, endearing and romantic - all the better So when you finally do give it to her, you might find her infinitely grateful to you Here's an example of an initial e-mail on this subject (**ASF**):

For whatever reason, as I was walking outside this evening, I thought of the most wonderful nickname for you. Like have you ever been thinking about someone, and it's like you almost feel their spirit gently whisper inside your mind, and you talk to them even though they may be miles away. Some people look up at the moon and realise that the one that can share their deepest thoughts can see the same moonlight that evening, drifting down through the clouds.

Anyway, I hope you, like me are having a great day. (your phone number here)

If she doesn't call you, she ain't human. NEXT!

If you really can't think of a nick-name on your own, you can use this advice by Anubis, **ASF**:

Find a personality facet that shines (or which she thinks shines) and put aside an analogous word that describes it. Then search for something about her appearance that glows with rarity (or which she spends a lot of time trying to make glow) and put aside an analogous word to describe that.

You now have two romantic or endearing or sexy analogues which, when put together, perform the wondrous neologic magic of a nickname!



Of course, if the magic goes a little sour, you'll have cooked up a nickname which even you can't stomach. In that case, throw it in the bin and start again. It actually gets very easy once you've done that a few times.

## **5 You've got her interested. now what?**

### **5.1 Common signs of interest**

Common signs of interest from the girl, applicable mostly in bar-room and club situations. Stephanie Alexander, Maxim :

- She compliments you on virtually anything. Women are used to receiving compliments, not giving them. So if she points out a positive characteristic, you've impressed her.
- She's disagreeing but laughing. Flirtatious sarcasm, as in Yeah, right, like I believe that! means she's into you. If she weren't, she'd simply Uh-huh you into oblivion.
- She keeps asking you to repeat yourself. She's not allowing the blasting music to come between the two of you. A suggestion of a quieter corner to talk in will be well received.
- She laughs at your lame junior high school-level jokes. She's obviously lust drunk. Or maybe just drunk.
- She touches you anywhere. Touch her back in the equivalent place, and let her up the ante, just in case her touch was an accidental slip of the hand.
- She stays put. If you run to drain the monster and she's still where you left her when you return, you're doing something right. Likewise if she comes back to you after she powders her nose.
- She doesn't flinch. If you reach across her to grab a drink or an ashtray and she doesn't pull back, she's feeling physically comfortable with you. Don't blow it, pal.
- She says, Hey, where ya goin'? as you leave the bar. She's angling for an invite. Even if she ultimately says no (she may not feel safe going off with you or may not want to ditch her friends) it's a sign she's game for a future hookup.

Maxin, Clifford's Seduction newsletter: I have built for myself a proximity alert system. When you walk into a room or store or bar etc, while a woman might be reluctant or too shy to make eye contact, sometimes, on a conscious or unconscious level, she will reveal her interest through proximity. Guys do this all the time. Have you ever walked into a bar and then made practically a bee line for the hottest chick, if only to be near her and check her out more? And maybe you changed your mind and instead of approaching her, you ordered a drink at the bar right next to her? I've been in stores shopping where it seemed that a woman I had seen, put herself near me several times over the course of 10-20 minutes. Coincidence? Maybe, but I don't really believe that, and it's far more useful for me to believe that a woman finds me interesting or attractive and is putting herself near me on purpose hoping that I may start something.

For more signs of interest, see: [Reading body-language](#)

### **5.2 Building a bridge AFC-style**

**ASF:** YOU are interested in her, SHE appears interested in you, what you need is a bridge to open communications: such bridges are constructed from a readily available material known commonly as bullshit. Think up some credible or not so credible story and get over there and knock on her door. You could tell her you're thinking of buying a dog and ask her advice, you could say you've noticed she drinks beer and you know of a good supplier, you could tell her you're doing a survey (you have a PC, so make some convincing looking questionnaires), you could tell her you're selling insurance or anything. It doesn't matter: you know its bullshit and she knows its bullshit. If she's receptive, as appears, it doesn't matter, she'll play along - that's one of the reasons why god put bullshit on earth. If not, she'll tell you to fuck off: so what?

**The Spare Shoe technique.** This is a variation of building an **AFC**-style bridge with a little less **AFC**-ness and a little more **PUA**-ness. Don't be fooled however, the fact that the bridge is built out of BS doesn't have to mean it won't hold, especially if she is laughing her way across the bridge

Benjamin Strackany, mindlist: Go up there one evening and bring a shoe or shirt or something. Knock on her door. When she answers, say, Hey, you, I was just passing by and I noticed this shoe here. Is it yours? Well, of course she'll say no, and then you smile and reply, Oh, hmm, well, I guess it must be mine then. So what're you up to? Then chat a little more and then run an **SS** pattern on her. Or chat a bit more and then sit down in her doorway and continue talking as if everything is natural. She'll notice and laugh and either invite you in or else ask what you're doing. You can then reply, Oh, I was getting a little tired standing up, but we're having such fun talking that I decided to rest a bit so I could put all my energy into making you laugh. She'll smile and either sit down to continue talking or else invite you in.

Even if she's busy, the above should make a cute impression, and you can follow up with an **SS** pattern to ask her out to coffee.

### **5.3 If more than one girl is giving you the vibe**

NYC, **ASF**: In a case like that where you are receiving vibes from TWO chicks, especially related ones consider EXTRACTING BOTH! The point is that if you take the niece, the aunt will feel rejected and cock-block. If you take the aunt, the niece will not CB, but she will not accept any advances from you BECAUSE you have declared interest in her aunt. What you want to do here is extract the chicks that LIKE YOU from the chicks that DON'T LIKE YOU and the guys. Separate the **targets** from the **obstacles**.

Use whatever you can - Have you ladies seen the, Look, a picture booth I've never taken a picture with an aunt and niece before let's go - do whatever you have to do to get them both away from the group. Once you get away, STAY AWAY! Either both will stay with you and you can chat them up and display personality, OR only ONE of them will go back to the group. This way they effectively decide amongst themselves which one gets you instead of YOU picking one and rejecting the other. If they BOTH try to go back to the group, say Oh cum on. One of you stay with me, that should start a debate as to which one will stay and which will go.

### **5.4 Reading the signs of a committed woman**

For starters - a story which at first glance only seems to illustrate the mistake of judging a girl by her words and not her actions. But after a more careful inspection, even those seemingly rejecting words of her are actually a complementary sign to her actions (the sign being - I want you!

Mr Happy, **ASF**:

Ok boys and girls, learn from Mr. Happy's mistake so that you don't fall for it yourself.

I met this chick online and got her to agree to meet me to play some pool. She was really hot. I also did a really good job of conveying personality I got in some good **negs**, some humor, some teasing, it was very playful, and also some light **kind**. (I know I did this right because she still messages me, etc so maybe I'll get a chance to correct the FUCK UP that I madread on.)

See the whole time she is talking about how she is a Christian, and she works for Campus Ministries, and she has a FIANCE, and how they're not just DATING, but they are COURTING and how special it is, blah blah. She also says how busy she is because of school, and that if I'm going to see her, it'll be on her terms (ha!) so at that point I thought, screw this, I have better things to do with my time. She invited me to a mechanical engineer (her major) party that friday and I turned her down.

She messages me a few days later and talks about how she got drunk and stoned at the party and how she went home with some other student and got her brains fucked out. She hopes she isn't pregnant, she doesn't intend to tell her fiance, etc blah.

That could have been me in there! I will never spare a chick again

Based on the story above, here are commentaries by Odious on what were or are the signs of a married or bofriended iow committed woman being interested in you. Odious, **ASF**:

OK, having been with married women before, there are 3 key signs that she's hot to trot and ready to step out.

1. She will open up to you and tell you what IS NOT happening with her man.

This goes for married women, women with boyfriends all of them. She will tell you flat out what it is she is missing and what she wants. When she starts telling you how he's not cutting it, she's letting you know that door is open. Now this woman did this, but it sounds like she was being subtle about it. She said they were courting, not dating what the hell is that? I think that meant we have a commitment but he's not fucking me.

2. If she's interested, she'll create opportunities for the two of you to be alone together.

I had a woman who I didn't even realize was interested in me, come over to my house to study and work on a paper because her computer was on the fritz. The thought that she was hot for me did not even cross my mind until she started asking me my opinions on the meaning and value of marriage iow what would you think of a woman who cheated on her husband with you right now!

3. She knows when he'll be around or not, so she'll want to call the shots as to when you see each other.

She obviously did that one. However, don't count yourself out just yet, because she is still giving you a subset of the first sign (which was - telling you what is not happening with her man). She may tell you about other sexual exploits - if she cheated on him before, or if she cheated on an old boyfriend etc. So this woman is hitting all the signs. She's opened up to you, she's making time, she wants to call the shots as to when you get together, and now she's telling you she cheated. The next time you see her, or talk to her - act like you think her cheating is no big deal, that you respect it when women can go for what they want. I have also found an attack on the sexist nature of the whole idea of monogamy to be very effective:

The whole idea of monogamy dates back to a time when women were treated as property. Men ran the world and made all the rules. So men could have mistresses and concubines, but if a woman cheated she was stoned to death. It is completely sexist and hypocritical. I think you should listen to your heart and your

desires, and see where that leads you. To me, that is the only way to go. Fulfill your desires, and seek pleasure. With me, that's what's important. Pleasure is a gift, indulge it and you become a more fulfilled and complete person. etc.

NYC explains why committed women are actually quite easy both to approach and even get very friendly with NYC, **ASF**:

Women that are taken are different from women that are single in that they are either LESS PICKY or MORE HORNY. Single women are either looking for more than just dick (MORE PICKY) or they have less of a sex-drive so they don't REQUIRE a man in their lives unless he's just what they want.

A chick that is taken gives herself to her boyfriend so he can fuck her. Now the pressure is on the guy to perform. Unless the guy is still HOT for the chick, the sex is routine or most importantly ORGASMLESS for the woman. When she meets you, she feels that DESIRE to be with a man. She feels YOUR DESIRE to please her and take your pleasure from her. It is that ROMANTIC kind of interaction that she doesn't get from her boyfriend coming home, turning on the TV, watching sports, feeling her up for a second (lack of foreplay is a MAJOR turnoff) and fucking her until HE cums and falling asleep. As long as she feels like she can get away with it and still have her hum-drum relationship intact, she will fuck you. You would be surprised how many women are taken but nowhere near SATISFIED! **HBs** are NEVER without a man. They keep the one they have until they hook up something new. Then they skip off, so if you are waiting for an **HB** to become SINGLE, you can forget it!

### **5.5 Capitalise**

To capitalise when doing a pick-up would be to and number close with a girl. To capitalise with a girl that you've already number or closed would be to do a follow-up of calling her and then either by patterning or using any other seduction technique helping her to realise what you both have really wanted all along And then doing it of course

Apart from your usual pick-ups though, you might have gotten a girl interested in you in the midst of your everyday chores - maybe a co-worker, a neighbour, a fellow student, a girl at the cashier. To capitalise would mean NOT TO LET THAT WINDOW OF OPPORTUNITY CLOSE! She is already preconditioned to liking you, so why let such a perfect opportunity slip? I assume of course, that you find her quite amiable as well

As for how to detect such an opportunity - you should know the signs of interest (see Reading body language for more details). She initiates contact, calls, emails or starts a conversation with you, smiles, asks questions etc, or reacts to your initiations more happily than before or more happily than your average indifferent girl would, giggles with her girlfriends when you pass her by, draws hearts in her college-block while sitting beside you (now you're not chasing high-school girls are you?. See Reading body language for more signs.

But she won't stay interested forever. Any day (or night) a new prospect might catch her attention and even without the threat of competition, her interest for you could wear off any moment, no matter what the reason. Even if not really having seduced her purposefully, if you detect her interest (and most probably she is doing her best to let you know and she is also quite to your liking, do end her suffering and extend a helping hand

Make sure that is not a supplicating **AFC**-ish hand though - that is one of the main reasons of the I was interested in him or her only until he or she developed an interest for me, then it became boring phenomenon. Stay on top of matters. A girl that has developed an interest in you independently in the course of a few months is no different from a girl that you just met and helped realise that you are the man of her dreams ten minutes from meeting her - they both need guidance or else they might get lost.

But you need to begin right away - don't wait for some non-existent right time to approach her or ask her out (hopefully you're past any such thinking though or for her to make the first move (she WON'T, and if you don't make the first move she will eventually dismiss you as an ignorant chump or think you're not interested and in either case - she'll move on). Believe me, if you already noticed the signs of interest, SHE IS interested! And don't even try to dismiss them as random friendliness or your imagination, if you noticed them, they're for real Now once you know she is interested - capitalise on it!

### **5.6 Don't forget to make a timely exit**

NYC: Even the most interesting guy can run out of interesting shit. Stay with them until you have demonstrated personality and made them laugh and are at a high point then CUT THEM OFF. Tell them you have to do something or it was nice meeting them or whatever and you would like to continue this conversation sometime under quieter circumstances. If your job is done, they will give you numbers and you can leave the group EVEN IF IT IS THE BEST THING GOING! You can come back later if you want, but you already have their numbers in case they leave or you need to rush out or catch a chick that wants to fuck right now! Even if you have to exit the bar and take a stroll and then come back having done nothing for ten

minutes, IMO, closing at a high point and returning later on is MUCH BETTER than talking yourself out and leaving nothing to the chicks' imaginations that makes them want to talk to you in the future.

### **5.7 Closing - the kiss close and the number close**

#### **The number close**

The conversation with the girl is going well, but eventually it has to end. Either she has to go or you have to go or you just feel you can't keep it up at the same heights anymore and need to stop before you stall. So what are the best ways closing? (A close by the way is not a Bye, it was nice meeting you, you'll have to extract something out of your interaction with the girl, either her phone-number, a promise for a new meeting, a kiss, better yet - all of those things. Here are a few examples.

##### **Example 1**

**You:** Why don't we continue this somewhere else and see how much we can enjoy each other's company?

In response she might offer a change of venue (if she mumbles your place or mine?, then boy! either she's real easy or you're real good, but more probably she's gonna offer a phone number so the two of you can set up a meeting later over the phone. Notice, that you didn't ASK for her phone number, it was her idea to give it to you, thus framing you in her mind very differently from when you would have asked for the number. The first instance creates in her mind a picture of I gave him my number. which must mean I like him while the second creates an opposite picture of He asked for my number. which must mean he likes me. yawn, yeah he's nice, next!

##### **Example 2**

**You:** So what steps would we have to take in order to make sure we can talk again? If a change of venue is highly unlikely, this one is a more direct wake-up call for her to usher you her number.

##### **Example 3**

**You:** I have an intuition. and I don't know if you can imagine this as I describe it. that when we get a chance to talk without time pressures or interruptions. we'll really enjoy each other's company. and I'm wondering if there's a number where you feel comfortable having me call you?

##### **Example 4**

Let's do x together. I'll call you  
But you don't have my number!  
Oh that's right! (pull out a pen)

##### **Example 5**

An example of Mystery's number close (the girl is already quite eager though and the number close is a formality, but beautifully handled nevertheless: Well, when we go blading you have to wear your gear cause I love the hills. She nods so I add, for this to happen you have to ask me a question. She blurts out, can I have your number? I say, wow you come on strong! Are you always this bold? She says, yes I act impressed and say, how bout we trade number s fair?.

A variation of the above. Mystery, Clifford's Seduction Newsletter:

**You:** Well now that we've set up a meeting, there's a question you need to ask me.

**Girl:** What?

**You:** Oh come on!

**Girl:** What's your phone number?

##### **Example 6**

(Taken from Sweep women off their feet Just abruptly look at your watch if you're wearing one, or if you don't have one ask for the time right in the middle of your conversation. Once you get the time make up an excuse that you have to go right away. Be polite and tell her how much you enjoyed this conversation and that it was your pleasure to meet someone like her and walk away.

Just as she will be all confused about what is going on, wondering if she said something to offend you or if perhaps you don't like her because you didn't ask her out or you didn't even ask for her phone number, come back as though you forgot something and say:

You know what? If we ever wanted to do this again, and laugh and have a good time together we don't even know how to get a hold of each other. And that would be such a tragedy. It would be a definite loss for me, but perhaps if you think about it and realize how much you enjoy having intriguing conversations, laughing and having a good time, you will know that it would be a loss for you too. So, what do you figure we should do about it?

The answer is obvious. But if she doesn't offer you her phone number right now while you still maintain this sense of urgency as you have to leave, ask her for it directly.

##### **Example 7**

If however you don't have the time or can't come up with anything to construct a situation for her to offer you her number, or you have offered all sorts of opportunities (So what should we do in order for us to be

able to continue this discussion some other time? Um I dunno?) but she just doesn't take the hint - ask for her number directly.

- I don't mean to be direct, but can I have your phone number.
- You can't leave You haven't given me your phone number yet!
- Give me your number, then hand a pen and a notebook (that simple?).

### Example 8

Johnny Shack: You should say I think you're a great girl and I think we would get along really well. Now if I didn't come and talk with you, which may seem a bit cocky, we would never get to know each other, so the best thing for me to do was to come and ask you out. You can't knock that now can you?

Wait for her reply which will almost definitely be in agreeance with you and then say: How about not organising anything now, but give me your phone number and it will give you some time to think about it and me some time to plan something for us.

Now don't stand around waiting for her to give you some long winded answer as to why or why not she will do this. You need to keep your presentation going by assuming she will give her number to you. You must ask for her number then and there as though you expect to get it from her. Even if you don't have a pen and paper ask for her number and then remember it. Ask her if it is in the phone-book in case you forget it and then ask what it would be under.

You have already explained why she should give her number to you and also given her the option in her mind that even if you ring she can still say no to you. Now that you have done this you need to focus on the phone number and it will take her mind away from a yes or no answer in regards to a date. Actually, whether she realises it or not, she really has just said to you she will go out with you. She may not even realise this at the moment as you have given her the option that even when you ring she can say no, but when it comes to that, she is more or less guaranteed not to decline.

### Refining the close

(originally suggested by Mystery) When you do the number close, don't just trade numbers, accompany it with a humorous But when I call you, I don't want you to answer Huh? Who? Ah. its you. ee. so. howzit going., I want you to act really enthusiastic and happy, like Oh, you called! God I'm so glad!, ok? Is that a deal? This ends the close on a very light, friendly and positive note plus automatically kick-starts the phone call on that very same note Additionally you can end the phone call in the same manner: So when we meet, I want you to smile, give me a big warm friendly hug and take my hand Deal? End the phone call and start the meeting with these and you'll have removed many an **obstacle** from your path to being one with the girl

A line to use when exchanging phone numbers. Mystery, Clifford's Seduction Newsletter: Is our relationship going be romantic? because I like romance!

(Taken from Sweep women off their feet Whether you are going to call her or vice versa, make sure that you set up a date and time for the call. Don't just say that you'll get in touch sometime son. Set an exact time for (calling).

Mystery, **ASF**: I will suggest something to do together when I'm closing. I will lead them to give me their number and during that time suggest that the number exchange will lead to more than just the roller blading or whatever we wanted to do together.

When I call, I tell them I have some stuff to take care of and I want her to keep me company - I then get some stuff done with them and go for a quick bite and talk in the car and drop by a friends house and do some little things. No date.

Mystery and Rick, Clifford's Seduction Newsletter: (when a girl is in a rush)

I understand you're in a hurry I'm in a hurry as well But what a lot of people don't understand is that time constraints are an illusion I mean you don't HAVE to leave right now There will be another cab (or something else, depending on the situation) Let's finish this (exchange numbers).

Maxim: The best thing he can do is try to make a date off of our common interests. If we were talking about golf, 'We should go to a driving range sometime' is a great thing to say. It's not like the pressure of a date, more like you're sports companions. If I want to see you, I'll pick up on your invite.

—Phoebe, 32, Westport, Conn.

Politeness is always a good thing. A simple handshake and 'I enjoyed meeting you, I'd love to talk to you again,' with a suggestion of a specific exhibition or a show to see is great. That would make me feel like a guy has it together.

—Aimee, 26, Berkeley, Calif.

If all of a guy's friends are leaving and he stays behind to talk to you, there's suddenly a lot of pressure on. He should always leave with his friends. He can simply say he doesn't want to ditch them, then ask if he can call me. He comes off like a good pal and not just someone on the make.

—Diana, 24, New York City



Whenever possible though, aim for the close, the number close will follow naturally plus it'll have much more meaning for the both of you

### The close

If you can read body-language fairly well, you'll know when the girl is receptive or ready or even waiting for a kiss close. She'll let you touch her without resistance, touches you in return, wets her lips slightly and or looks at your lips, especially when you are about to depart (be observant though, they're doing it subconsciously and generally don't want to let you in on their already aroused little fantasies about you).

But there are a number of situations, where things are not that clear, you're not sure if she is in the mood or things have not been too going well etc. The dumbest thing to do here is to leave without actually finding out (Ok, bye now, was nice meeting you), this applies even if you did the number close (Ok, well, I'll call you. etc). Of course, you have to pick your situations - for example you can't start asking for a close in front of her friends or relatives (she might even be dying to kiss you, but she just can't do it in front of others - that's why extracting her or separating her from the others is so important) - but you should always aim for the close nevertheless.

Don't use a Can I kiss you? line - its indicative of your supplicating tendencies and puts her too much on a pedestal from which its easy for her to reject you. Instead, use the Mystery-style Would you like to kiss me? and go for the kiss if the response is anything but a blatant NO! Don't expect a yes, you'll hardly ever get it (but if you did, you can fairly safely assume the same answer to a would you like to make love to me?. But the lack of an outright refusal (I don't know.) usually means that she really would like to kiss you, but she's just processing the situation as kissing has both social and personal implications and she's not quite ready or its not a comfortable place for her to do it etc, but never mind all that, say Let's find out and go for the kiss - she'll enjoy it. If the reply however is a NO!, then do a Mystery-style followup: Gee, you sure wrecked a moment, I bet your previous BFs must have really hated that about you. Its a good neg to make her re-evaluate her position and usually you will be able to proceed with her the next time you try (note the importance of persistence here!)

Veroxii, ASF: After doing some fluff-talk with a girl and getting some rapport and light kino going, I ask her if she likes local or foreign guys better, because I prefer foreign girls over local girls (which is a lie! Then after her But why? I tell her it's because local girls don't know how to kiss properly. I think you guys can see where I'm going with this. After a little bit of an argument (because they actually do kiss quite well), I just grab her and say so let's find out! and give her the full tongue action. Sidenote: you need to have at least some kino going before this, or she might freak out.

SirMoby, ASF: I always ask the HBs Do you like ice cream? Of course they say Yes and ask Why do you ask? I explain that women that don't like ice cream probably kiss with their mouth closed and that the women of (insert the homeland of the HB here) seem to have no passion. They immediately come back about how passionate they are. I usually get an open mouth kiss in a few minutes and they also start telling me about their passions.

### 5.8 Asking for a date?

No, you're not going to ask for a date. Movies, dinners (or. museums, anyone? are for girls that have convinced you that they want you in a most believable fashion - by having done the fun with you (and I don't mean playing Monopoly).

But let's say you have number - or closed a girl. You need to get in contact with her again, right? You could of course do patterns over the phone and have her rush horny to your doorstep. But it is infinitely better to meet her in person. So what you do, is suggest a get-together, preferably somewhere where you two can talk, see each other and touch each other undisturbed.

Just as your pick-up attempt must look like anything but a pick-up attempt, so must your asking for a date be anything but that. For that purpose it is recommended not to ask her for a get-together on a Friday or a Saturday night. Not that you shouldn't do it, but the time itself suggests a more date-like occasion, an image which is better avoided. If you nevertheless decide in favour of a Friday or Saturday night, keep in mind that the odds of her being busy are higher than on other nights, so she may have to turn you down, which could create some bad vibes. And it might tell her that you don't have anything (or anyone) to do on the weekend (so don't forget to serve it as the only few moments of free time in your schedule).

On the other hand, the benefits of arranging a meeting during the week are as follows (Don Diebel

- You imply that you are busy on the weekend. In other words, you are involved with other girls.
- The odds of her being available are greater.
- Weeknights imply a casual, no-pressure atmosphere which is good to get to know her (or rather, to get her to get to know you).
- You have turned a dull weeknight into a good time for her - good vibes right off the bat.

Now that we've cleared that the date in asking for a date is not a date but a get-together, its time to reveal that neither is the asking asking but suggesting. You don't ask her for anything. You're giving her opportunities (like you didn't ask for her phone-number, you constructed her an opportunity of giving it to you). And you are just making suggestions (We should meet or get-together. How about then and there?). Don't make the mistake of putting her on the pedestal and grovelling before her begging and asking please-please-please will you go out with me?, oh please let's go on a date?, oh please please do cum with me! If you ASK her to go out with you and she says no, she won't even give it another thought (and don't be fooled by any excuses she might be giving you). But if you SUGGEST a casual meeting and offer her a time and place, she'll first have to think, what she's doing at that time, and if it turns out she's busy (she might very well be), she is much more likely to offer another time and or or another place. Either way, you're much more likely to get yourself your get-together.

If however you sense some reluctance on her part nevertheless (maybe some other time, no, my schedule is full till next year etc), you need to take out the big guns (no, not those, pull up your pants! It seems like time for patterning, negging, value-eliciting or whatever seems more appropriate with her over the phone. Ask her is she has a little time to talk to you now. Even if it has been her earnest attempt to **LJBF** you and blow you off, she might feel just a little guilty about it and agree to talk to you for a few minutes. And now you've got her

But all through this process remember, you don't NEED her. If she's smart enough, she knows a good thing when she sees (or hears one. But if she just consistently seems to be wasting your time, heck, you've got some 50 more phone-numbers waiting in line to be called

In a situation when you have acquired the phone number of a girl that you are or have become interested in in business circumstances (as opposed to having acquired her number to call her in a matter of a more personal nature), you can still turn this around for you by using the following advice from Johnny Shack. Whether you have become in possession of her number as either one of you being a representative, salesman or clerk of some sort and after you're sure that you and her will most probably not be conducting any business in the future (because you know what they say about mixing work and personal life), you can call her with the following (by Johnny Shack):

You really caught my attention and thats why I'm talking with you now. Wait for her to reply and then say, I'm the type of guy who can't hold back his emotions and if I didn't ring and talk with you I just wouldn't have been able to sleep tonite. You need to deliver this in a fun sort of way so its not too corny but it is what they all love to hear. If you can have them listening to this and have them wondering if you mean it, then you are on a winner and you have delivered it to perfection. Then say So how about we go out on the weekend and see if we like each other? I'm a pretty good judge of character and I think we'll get along. So how about Friday or Saturday night (think twice though before asking her on such a formal-sounding weekend date, see the beginning of this article for more information)

Naturally, this approach can also be tailored to non business-related situations, just substitute the business to personal type communication transition with something more appropriate. And here's some more advice on asking the girl out via the phone. Johnny Shack:

If you deliver these (asking her out) lines a few times, you will adapt to them easily. You won't need a written prompter in front of you once your confidence is flowing and you'll master some typical comebacks to their answers. However, it may be a good idea to have a prompter to if you're still a beginner - this will keep you on track if you get stuck for words. Also, its not a bad idea if you are not a natural conversationalist to have a few topics written down on paper in front of you to keep things going. If you ring a girl, you need to keep the topics flowing - this communicates to her that the two of you are getting along well. After a while you will mold your own personality into what you are saying and it will start to come across very naturally. It is important to stick to the basic message (of asking her out) though.

During the conversation compliment her and let her know how she really grabbed your attention (once again, think twice about this, see Neghits explained and Paying her a compliment for more information). Everyone loves to talk with people who make them feel good. It can also make her feel so special that nothing could stop you from calling her.

If she says to you that you ask girls out all of the time don't get thrown. You say this: Well, yes I do go out with a lot of girls because I'm picky. Wait for her to talk. She will most likely say: How can you be picky if you go out with a lot of girls? It doesn't make sense. This is where you will win her over by saying: When I find the girl who can keep me interested then I will stay with her. I need to go out with different girls to give myself a chance of finding her. Otherwise I would have to just stay at home and I'll never meet my dream girl will I? By ending this with will I? you put her in a position where it is her turn to answer and any reasonable thinking girl will agree with what you are saying.

With this you have successfully demonstrated a philosophy to her, which gels with your own intentions of taking her out on a date. She has understood what you are talking about and it applies to her as well. She will start to think that you do have to go out with a lot of people to find the one you really want and if she is single she may as well go out with you.

I have to interfere here. If she is single - it may be argued that this is exactly why asking someone directly on a date might sometimes not be a good idea as a simple phone-call from you most probably won't be enough for her to go out with you, especially if she is not single. Then again, it is always ultimately better to try a lower probability approach than not to try anything at all. Besides, you should be too busy to care for a possible rejection. And being busy is also exactly why you'd use this fast and lower probability approach as you simply lack the time or motivation to invest in a higher probability approach. After all, you don't even quite know her yet, so why would you want to invest anything more to get her to agree to go out with you. In fact, this is also exactly why you're calling her - you're only trying to give the both of you a chance to get to know each other better. In conclusion - if you already know you really want her, you'd better take into consideration the lower probability rate of this approach, if however you're not quite sure yet, this approach is a perfect way to find out. Now on with Johnny Shack's advice:

Always remember that she wants to find a boyfriend or lover just as you want to find the woman you desire. You have also got her to agree with your philosophies and she will now start to look at you as a smart person. Women want a man to be able to teach her things and to be the decision maker. In the majority of marriages you will find the man is at least 51% in control. Most women want their man to be smart and the one in control so if you win a conversation like this one early on then you will be in a good position to land her if you want to.

Also, you let her know how your emotions took control of you and that is why you couldn't stand it if you didn't ring her. Women don't want wimps but they do want a guy who is sensitive and can talk about his emotions.

If you say you couldn't sleep if you didn't call her you are adding charm and showing what a fun personality you have. Personality and charm will win a girl over good looks more times than you thought possible.

You actually ask the question about you both going on a date together. You ask her out and you also give an approximate time for when you should go out together. You don't want to give her a yes or no answer question rather you want to give her a question about if the weekend is suitable. This can get you a lot of dates when the girl may not have even planned on saying yes to you. She is not thinking about whether or not she will go out with you now but whether or not the weekend will be all right. Your assertiveness can throw your **targets** thinking off balance for just enough time to make a date with her. Once you get her to say yes it is very hard for her to turn around and cancel the date (see If she cancels the date for more information on what to do, if that happens).

And once the date is set and the initiating routine agreed upon (see [Set the mood of the date from the start](#) in Kinesthetics and [Refining the close](#) in Closing for more information on that) it is time to hang up. Linger on the phone after closing the date is the kiss of death. If anything ever needs to be quit, the best time to do it is always the highpoint, and the highpoint of your conversation with her is fixing the date. So be polite, make your departure and leave her frying in the excitement of the upcoming date

## **5.9 Proceeding instead of closing**

A very viable alternative to closing is simply proceeding. If both you and her seem to have some time to spare and things are going well, why would you literally want to close a wonderful thing? To leave her wanting for more? To work some more magic over the phone and build up anticipation, incredible connection and attraction? Sure, but none of this compares to being able to make things happen right now. And if there seem to be no unsurmountable **obstacles**, then that is exactly what you should be doing.

The following example adapted from Sweep women off their feet uses big-time supplication, but being fairly off-the-wall and presented as anything to make you smile, it does the trick. The main value of this example however is the application of proceeding instead of closing.

There is no better time to go out than right there and then. If you already spent some time talking to a girl you just met and she is responsive, asking her out can mean nothing more than taking the conversation somewhere else.

(Talking with female colleagues on the street). Just as I turn around I see this amazingly beautiful girl walking down the street towards us.

I looked straight into her eyes and said:

You know what I think? I think it should be illegal for someone to be as beautiful as you.

As she made her way past the three of us, she turned her head and said:

Who me? as though she was trying to figure out if I was talking to her. She began to blush.

Yeah, you! You are going to cause an accident. At least if I was one of those guys driving down the street, I couldn't take my eyes off you and bump the car in front of me.

Nah, you're just saying that. And then she walked into the building.

Wait, just wait a second. Do you think that you're just going to walk into my life like that, completely blow me away with your beauty, style and magnetic personality and then walk away never to be seen again?

Well, as sweet as you make it sound, I do have some things to take care of in this building and I have to go.

That's fine with me. Just tell me how long you'll be and I'll wait here for you. I won't even take another breath until you return if that is your wish.

Without saying another word she went into the elevator and off she went. Five minutes later I was still out there talking to my two friends when she came back out of the building. I walked up to her again and said:

Wow, I knew that you were going to come back to me. You didn't tell me how long I should wait but I was ready to go home and get my tent and camp out here for as long as needed just to see you again.

She starts giggling and says:

What kind of girl do you think will fall for this kind of lines?

Actually, if these lines can put a smile on your face, then I can die a happy man. I suppose I'm ready to die now. My dream has come true. I made you smile. I wonder if I can do it again. But you know this is not even funny. Usually I am a self-centered bastard just like any other guy, keeping my feelings to myself, then this girl walks into my life and changes everything. I start pouring out my inner most feelings and you think they are just some cheesy pick-up lines. (Acting hurt)

Somehow I just don't see you as a self-centered bastard. You're just being too hard on yourself.

I can prove it, but you have to spend some time with me, perhaps have a drink with me around the corner at the E and C (nice restaurant and sports bar).

But I don't drink. Besides why would I want to really find out that you are a self-centered bastard? That's not what most girls want in a guy.

Ok, I don't drink either. We can have a couple of soft drinks. But I know that in my attempt to show you my dark side, you will realize how much fun you're having and I'll get yet another chance to admire your beauty. I'll even make you a deal. The minute you stop laughing and having a good time that's the minute that you get up and walk away. No strings attached.

Are you buying?

I wouldn't even have it any other way.

Ok, you're on.

The casual tone of the entire conversation allowed us both to laugh all throughout.

After drinks I told her that I had plans for later in the evening because I wanted to see this movie, but I would love it even more if she came along. By now she was very comfortable in my company and she had no problem saying yes. At the movies we bumped into an old acquaintance and after introducing them he said out of the blue that we look good as a couple and that we would have good looking kids. As you can see, we were already acting like a couple in love, and that's how people around us perceived us. (well, you won't be able to count on bumping into old acquaintances telling you your kids will be cute, but acting like a couple in love goes a long way nevertheless). At the end of the evening when I took her home we kissed and said good night. We never even exchanged phone numbers as of yet. From earlier conversations she mentioned of her love to read and the vast collection of books she has. At that very moment I asked her if she had any books on love and she said yes. Can I take a look? We went upstairs and she told me to wait by the door so she can tidy up a bit before I can go in. Once I was in she showed me her books and gave me the one about love. I sat on the floor and told her It says in here that love usually happens when you least expect it but if you're in doubt there's a little test to find out for sure. I asked her to sit next to me for the test. We kissed and I never left until the next morning.

Though we spent a few hours together before this happened, the point that I'm trying to make is the fact that meeting a girl for the first time can turn into more than an exchange of phone numbers and a possible date down the road. In this case, having slept together, how hard do you think it would be to ask her out on a date? In her mind it would only be natural that we continue our relationship by going out together, and yes, more sex. But at the same time, the fact that we both had the time to talk and get to know each other right away was the deciding factor. If we were under time constraints and constantly interrupted, the most we would have accomplished would have been the exchange of numbers and perhaps another date.

If at any time the time constraints and interruptions seem to be interfering with proceeding though, you should do the close (taken from Sweep women off their feet):

It is indeed nice talking to such a wonderful person as you just about anything that can make us both laugh and feel good. But can you imagine how much more we could enjoy each other's company if we were in a more comfortable setting without any kind of time pressures or interruptions, allowing us to really explore the topics of conversation that allow us to have a good time and laugh the most. I think we owe ourselves at least one chance to experience that. Wouldn't it be great to experience that and let it happen?

You basically asked her if she likes to have fun. Who doesn't like to have fun? From here it's easy to set a date for you to spend some time together.

### 5.10 Our World routine

The Our World routine, contributed by Maniac High, constructs an imaginary world for both you and the girl, where the two of you can feel happy, comfortable and relaxed, and free to do anything you wish irrespective of the rules and norms of society or the attitudes of other people, because quite simply - you are now in a different world, a world without any outside influences, a world where normal rules don't apply, a world for just the two of you. You are in our world

The desired outcome of building our world in a conversation with the girl is to agree on ending up at your place the next time you two meet. This also works very well when arranging a date over the phone. But don't start building the world until you know exactly, what it needs to be like. So first you have to find out about her values and principles and her possible objections to meeting you or ending up at your place. After you've done enough value-eliciting and come to know her possible objections (she might have a boyfriend, she might be afraid of social labelling etc), you can start building the perfect world for the two of you, which represents all of which she values, circumvents everything she objects to but most importantly (and this is what you are striving for - is free of any usual social restrictions and objections to sharing, loving, touching, feeling wonderful in each other's company, you know where this list is headed to

The following example assumes the girl has a boyfriend as an additional **obstacle** (modified from Maniac High's post to **ASF** describing yet another Japanese **PUA** in action).

The first thing to do is fluff talk and finding her interests, then shifting from interests to romantic talk ASAP. For example, if a chick says she likes snowboarding, you'll ask if she ever had a **BF** who liked snowboarding. If she did - start talking about that **BF**, and what he was like. If not, you can ask if she had a **BF** with any similar hobbies and then what he was like etc. So you can move into what she likes in a guy, and relationships, and then onto the general nature of human beings. Make sure the girl is fairly intelligent for such themes though, because if she isn't, she might feel like you're flying over her head and leaving her in the dust, in other words - miserable and bored. So if she responds - continue; if not, switch themes.

Assuming she is able to keep up with the conversation about the nature of all human beings, you can continue talking about what a human being is like in his or her essence and what are his or her natural desires - a need, a craving for affection and nurturing; giving, receiving and sharing love; feeling close and becoming one with another human being; feeling protected and safe, yet free to do whatever her heart wishes to do etc. Then compare that with how society restricts her in certain ways, like being able to have only one **BF** or one husband. Then talk about how it is interesting that in other societies, like Arab or amongst certain Mormons it is different - the woman is free to have several men and not feel ashamed or embarrassed, because it is just an expression of natural human feelings anyway (this one is tricky though - she must be intelligent enough to keep up with the conversation but not intelligent enough to know that those claims are actually FALSE! So watch your step. In western cultures however this is (unfairly) looked down at.

This is where you introduce the concept of our world. Suggest an idea of our own special world, where the rules of society don't have to apply (with the underlying message of cheating on your **BF** is fine, and where you can hold each other and hug, be comfortable in each other's arms, relaxed, happy and feel secure. Your goal here is to make her feel secure and free to betray her **BF**, because all of this takes place in a separate world of just the two of you (apart from this example of using our world to overcome her objections to cheating on her boyfriend, remember that you can use our world to overcome any possible objections she might have).

After this is done and all set up, you then make the pitch for her to come over in order to enjoy that separate world where you can be together and hold each other in our world. You describe how you can celebrate, hug, and don't forget to say directly that she doesn't have to have sex if she doesn't want to (continue building a world of security and freedom). Say something like Have you ever felt or noticed when holding each other, how it feels good, how it feels to connect with each other and feel fabulous. I think that sex, well it's like a recognition of this connection. Usually around this point, she accepts to come over and you agree on a time or date.

But you're not home free yet. Either when talking to her over coffee or over the phone, don't end the conversation here. Her agreeing to come to your place might mean she will be comfortable and then again, it might not. And even if she feels comfortable about it at the moment, she might just freak out at the last moment the next time you meet and bail. Women have a much more easier time accepting almost anything, if they have been told about it in advance and they know to expect it. So instead of leaving now, introduce and describe to her the next time the two of you are going to meet. Describe the initial encounter in beautiful, wonderful, uplifting and positive terms. Plus don't forget to add some important details

Here's an example of what to say: It will be a wonderful day, which you can already imagine now as I meet you at the (station or place), I will hug you, and that connection will be visible, I will take your hand, and we will begin the journey to our world (my place and then when we arrive at the gate or door, I will kiss you, and we will enter together and how nice it will be to connect, hold each other, being free from restrictions of the outside world, when we are in our world together, and feeling fabulous together. And how wonderful that will all feel. You can imagine that, can't you?.



Now that you're scripted the encounter, the two of you can depart. And when the day comes, act it out exactly as you described it (you can't do anything about the weather though - if its raining when you were describing a sun-shiny day, well, a bummer, lets hope she won't mind).

So you meet the girl, hug her and say: Welcome, I am glad you have come to share our world today. You then take her and go to your place. At the door you say: Welcome to our world, and add that you want to kiss you before you enter, like you said on the phone. Usually the girl agrees and you can kiss her gently outside (setting the stage for when she gets inside).

You go in, sit down. Talk about a relaxing secure hug, then start to hug on the couch or wherever it is you sat down. Then kiss her again - which is okay, since you already started outside. Then some more kissing and more touching neck ears breast (okay, you're on your own from here on).

Maniac High: He says it works every time. It runs like clockwork, and he could lay a girl after about 20 minutes after they got in.

### **5.11 Inviting the girl over to your place**

Three different scenarios of inviting a girl over to your place as either a continuation of a date or the two of you just hanging out together will be discussed below.

#### **The basic premise**

The basic premise of all these scenarios is the assumption that you have already been spending some time together that very same evening - either you have had a date, or met at some party (wedding, reception, birthday etc), or a nightclub or bar or pub. But now that the party is about to end, or the pub to close, or you're almost done with all the prescribed dating activities (be it movies, restaurants etc) - what next?

Here are three different scenarios of proceeding for you to examine and make the right choice from. Oh, and by the way, a scenario of You or Her: Thanks, I had a really great time, bye now! will not be discussed at all, I hope you don't minds

#### **Scenario I**

Fluff talk. Facts talk. Then some more fluff talk. You steer the discussion to whatever seems to hold her interest and you know you have exhibits of at home - arts and literature or you have lots of books on them or paintings, statues etc; music or an records collection; movies or books on movies or a movies collection etc. Now you can quite casually somewhere in the dicussion mention You know I have a great (book or collection) on (whatever). And when the time comes, you can say: Well, why don't you come to my place and check out (whatever) I was talking about. I could show you (this) and (that).

She turns you down. And this was the whole point of the first scenario. She turns you down, thus it really doesn't matter what you did or didn't do. The sneaking up to a cheap pretext to throw her way is just one example of the wrong way to do it. There are countless more and AFCs all over the world are doing it daily, failing miserably and getting laughed at by the girls behind their backs.

In conclusion - she didn't even accept the invitation.

But I'm not telling you yet, how to avoid being turned down - read the next scenario

#### **Scenario II**

Fluff talk. Feelings talk. Onto the value and personality demonstration method (aka seduction technique of your choice. You can see that you are making her feel good She smiles, laughs, has a puppy-face, etc, things are going well. You might even be having some slight kino (touching hands, maybe holding hands when walking in the streets etc). She has got to be into you So up comes the topic of going to your place, for whatever reason, could even be the lame I'll show you this book and that record pretext of the first scenario. And she agrees

She comes to your place because she likes you and trusts you. But um well you like her and trust her too, otherwise you wouldn't have asked her over But that wasn't exactly your point

Oh well, you proceed to work your magic - make her feel good, relaxed, at ease, connected etc. But soner or later there comes a time of revelation for her - she might be about to see more than just some book. Once she has had that revelation, she can either decide that she wouldn't mind that at all and in fact she would like that very much Or she might first freeze up from the shock and horror of the unexpectedness of that revelation, then panic and finally flee.

In conclusion - she accepts the invitation, but there are no assurances as to whether she also decides to stay or not.

But I'm not telling you yet, how to avoid being run away from - read the next scenario

#### **Scenario III**

Fluff talk. Feelings talk. Onto the value and personality demonstration method (aka seduction technique of your choice. You can see that you are making her feel good etc, everything starts out just like in the previous scenario. But there's modification to it - instead of slight kino (holding hands etc), the two of you will

have much more intimate **kino**. That means stroking her hand, hair, waist, holding her and then the ultimate test - kissing. Actually kissing serves a double purpose:

a) As already mentioned, it serves as the ultimate test - if she is reluctant to kiss you when you're hanging out, there's good chance she will also be reluctant to kiss you when she comes to your place.

Kissing of course is a huge decision for a girl, so if you want to test her willingness to also stay in case she decides to accept your invitation at all, you must first make the kiss for her as comfortable as possible - you'd better have already had previous **kino** (hugging, stroking), be in a more secluded place or in a place, where she feels it's ok to kiss (so this could also be in the middle of the dance-floor of a nightclub, where things like that occur frequently) etc.

If she refuses a kiss, don't give up yet, see the suggestions on kiss-closes in Closing. If however she doesn't seem to want to kiss you, there's little chance that she'd accept your invitation as well, for now she knows what it really is she has to decide about when considering your invitation. You can still try of course, but I'd say that if she accepts to come to your place after having refused a simple kiss you've got yourself one strange girl

b) Aside from being a test of whether or not there would be any point in inviting her over, kissing also serves as a mighty powerful aphrodisiac. She might be willing to come to your place anyway, and she might be willing to kiss you, but she might not be thinking in terms of staying a bit longer than it would take to check out a few books. Having started kissing with you however will definitely sway her thinking in the horny direction so that she might even start thinking about doing it with you tonight without you ever mentioning anything about going to your place to check out a book or something. But when you finally do that, she'll be more than happy to accept

In conclusion - no turning you down, no coming over and then fleeing, but a girl who knows what to expect and expects what she has come to know. And that is the kind of girl you want to show your books to

So remember - kiss-test or arouse her first, otherwise you'll be just shooting in the dark.

NYC's suggestions to someone whose girl was comfortable with the **kino** and kissing but seemed reluctant to come to his place. NYC and his usual graphic language, **ASF**: FORGET YOUR HOUSE! If you had taken her somewhere secluded, you could have fucked her on the premises. She was rejecting GOING TO YOUR HOUSE NOT you feeling her up. She was totally with it and you lost out because you tried to change the venue. You can lose your vibe en route to the new location, so I personally don't like to change venues. Do her in the bathroom if you have to.

### **5.12 If she has second thoughts**

To help her decide, when she already wants it, you can try these pattern-like approaches:

Ross Jeffries:

We shouldn't do it, and we shouldn't enjoy so much. And please don't try to convince me, that you'd really want to do it. now. with me, this is the way I see it.

I just talked to my friend, Tina, and she told me it is so unbelievably unfair, that men can make love to any woman they choose, but if a woman wants to express exercise and enjoy her sexual liberty, she is frowned upon. And I completely agree with her, frowning is just an expression of utter hypocrisy. For example, have you ever met a guy and instantaneously felt an irresistible attraction and fascination, that son thoughts and feelings start flashing in your mind that you'd like to act upon and make a reality right away? It is just so unfortunate, how the society frowns when you just relax and let go and truly enjoys your feelings. now. with me. the way I see this is that (bla-bla)Answer:

Have you ever met someone (**sp**) and instantaneously feel such a complete attraction for him (**sp**), that you feel like you just have to do something about it? It's the kind of feeling, that you just have to get near that guy and you know, that even if you never see him again, you'll be happy with all your choices and you'll always cherish the pleasant memories?

Aside from patterning your way around her second-thoughts, you could also tackle her possible objections (to going out with you, to sleeping with you etc) head-on. But this will only work in case these objections are for real - meaning they are not some BS-excuses meant to just jerk you around until she decides to **LJBF** you. Differentiating between BS- and real excuses is not easy to do as many excuses that sound like complete BS to men are very real for women indeed.

The following example taken from Sweep women off their feet illustrates a BS-sounding but real objection and how it was overcome:

There was this girl who used to be a model. She was absolutely gorgeous and had a great body. She was always concerned that her butt was too big. I had the hardest time seducing her and trying to make love because of it. She was hot and bothered, she wanted to have sex as much as I did but this silly little thing was stopping her. She didn't want me to see her naked because she was ashamed of her big butt and she was afraid I wouldn't find her attractive anymore. Anything I would say to let her know that her butt is just fine was met with resistance. The only reason you're saying that is because you don't want to hurt my feelings,

she kept saying. So what happened? We compromised. We had sex in complete darkness so I can't see her big butt. It took us sleeping together a few times before she was comfortable enough for me to see her naked, and of course, she went on a diet before that.

Ideally she should of course be so attracted to you after all the patterning and value-eliciting etc, that she just doesn't care any more and simply has to have you. However you can not always count on that, in which case it is easier to find out what her possible objections might be and then do your best to make the issues go away.

If you can't seem to figure out, what exactly her objections are, you can make it more comfortable for her to tell you by using this slightly humorous approach: Imagine I have a magic wand and I can use this magic wand to make anything I wish just disappear. So just tell me one thing you'd like for me to make disappear in order for you to feel comfortable about us going out together (or going to my place or your place. It can be absolutely anything - maybe a person, or some attitude of our society, or a project you need to finish in time, maybe something about yourself, or something about me - absolutely anything. But what would that one thing (you'd like to disappear in order for you to feel comfortable about us being together) be?

There's a good chance that after having formulated her objection, it starts to look smaller and even insignificant to herself already. But you didn't ask the above question just to rely on that. Depending on the objection you should now be trying to eliminate or lessen the **obstacle** any way you can (patterning your (her way around it, reaching some sort of a compromise etc).

The following strategy is designed to eliminate any possible second-thoughts she might have before she ever has them. For that purpose you will have to give her what Jobet Claudio from Mindlist calls The Mental Escape Hatch:

When closing the deal with a woman, always, and always, and always provide her Mental Escape Hatch. More often than not a woman will have an internal conflict about fucking with someone who's not her boyfriend or husband. This may stem mostly from societal programming and no woman will want to have herself labelled as a tramp, either by herself or by society.

Thus it is incumbent upon you to create a Mental Escape Hatch for a woman. In simpler words, give her an EXCUSE to have sex with you. In effect, she must be able to retain her self-worth even after she's had the tremendous experience of doing it with you. And you do that by creating a mental escape hatch, an excuse, or a scapegoat upon which she can point blame as to why it happened. That excuse can range from the lame to the profound, but it doesn't matter too much. Just do it and give her an excuse - give her an excuse to fuck you.

For example, if you wanna take her to your place, you aint gonna tell her: Hey, lets go to my place and fuck. In her mind, an alarm goes off saying Yeal! I wanna um Tramp! Tramp! Tramp!

The right way to do it is to present something that could be interesting to her. Hey wanna see my Picasso collection (owws?) I've got a wonderful collection of rare love music in my pad wanna listen to them and maybe we'll go for a nightcap then I'll walk you home (subtitle: in the morning)?

Then of course there's alcohol. A great excuse for many. You drink a couple of glasses of wine. You fire off your NLS routine. She falls for it and you make love on the couch. In the morning, she can always tell herself Ohhmust have been the wine. Great huh? A mental escape hatch. An internal excuse.

What's the mechanics of this? What does it do? It allows her by shifting responsibility to someone or something else other than herself, to retain her self-esteem. And if you know what you're doing, don't and I mean DON'T try to break down her excuse. More often than not, the mere fact that she did it with you one time is already an excuse for her to do it again. By then, the psychological barriers have been broken down.

Mental Escape Hatches can be used in the pre- and post-fuck stages. As a pre-fuck routine, it disarms resistance by presenting different motives other than sex. As a post-fuck routine, it ensures that the woman won't feel bad about doing it and you wont get something akin to buyers remorse.

For example, with one of my partners, I asked her Hey I've got Sleepless in Seattle at home. Wanna watch a home movie with me? There'll be popcorn and some wine. She went. We did it. Mentally, she would say to herself We never intended to do it we just went there to watch a movie, but I got so swept away by my emotions from the film so when he kissed me it just felt so right

### **5.13 My home is my love-nest**

Have your home prepared, all the time, for all sorts of events Because you never know What you need:

- A warm enough temperature, more or less warm enough for nakedness
- Lights that can be dimmed down, but better yet, keep a set of candles at hand.
- Always have some chocolate and wine or champagne in store.
- Have an attractive scent about your quarters (you can use special candles for that purpose)
- Have music - Vangelis, Enigma, Enya, musical scores of movies, classical pieces.

- Don't forget to switch off the telephone, when the situation calls for it
- You can also use a Do not disturb sign on the door.
- Protective measures - have them and know where they are.
- In the bathroom - have good brands on display of colognes, shampoo etc.
- About the bathroom its clean right?
- Keep on hand big fluffy terry-towels, two robes and an extra new toothbrush (still in the package).
- A slightly more ample collection of pillows than in your average home wouldn't hurt

A suggestion by Frank Boyd: Good classical CD's are cheap. Buy extras and send her home with an anchoring gift.

#### 5.14 Networking and pivots

Here's a rule never to forget: ugly girls have ugly girlfriends, mediocre looking girls have mediocre looking girlfriends and. yep, you guessed it - beautiful girls have beautiful girlfriends Networking in the context of this guide is getting to know every beautiful girl's girlfriends - either she introduces you to them, they want themselves to be introduced to you by her or you hang out together and you get to know them naturally and. then you move on to those girls and their girlfriends This is why it is important not to lose one single girl - you will not only lose the girl but also a chance to meet all her female friends and their female friends etc.

What do I mean by losing? The most glaring example is her **LJBF**-ing you - then you're pretty much dead (and no, you won't be friends with her and get to meet all her friends this way. Naturally, if you play it right, it will never happen to you - she either falls for you completely, or when you see that you're not getting anywhere you cut your losses before she notices anything (and has a chance to **LJBF** you), or she simply is not up to your standards and you **LJBF** her instead. Besides being **LJBF**-ed you could lose a girl in a number of similar ways - negging a sub-9 who'll hate you for it (see **neg** hits), confronting her with a proposal she outright refuses (can I buy you a drink?, wanna dance?, your place or mine? - all of which communicate you a message of I don't want you (at least not now or at least not this way or at least not here to be more precise. (With enough knowledge, experience, sensitivity and persistence you could of course regain control of the situation and even win her back. Would you however have had those qualities in sufficient quantities, you should never have encountered a situation of losing her in the first place So whenever you are on the verge of losing a girl, remember that her value is not only in what she herself has to offer but also in all her girlfriends you could get to know. Thinking about it like that, it should become much easier for you to **LJBF** her first (which in fact has much more of a chance of getting to be her friend than her having **LJBF**-ed you or to keep her as a pivot instead of cutting her loose.

In addition to being able to make friends with all their girlfriends, keeping girls as pivots has the added benefit of letting you be seen with girls. This makes other girls envious and intrigued about you, and presents you as a challenge as opposed to you being alone, thus easy and a bore plus a looks-like-nobody-wants-him-anyway. So get to know beautiful girls and their girlfriends, hang out with them, network, make them your pivots whenever appropriate. One word of caution though - don't forget that being friends with beautiful girls and making them your pivots is not your GOAL, it is only a side-strategy You do remember what your goal is, don't you?

NYC (**ASF**): BASICALLY it's use it or lose it. She has first right of refusal. We are either going out as a guy and a girl that are going to be all over each other and fuck at the end of the night, OR we are going out as ME trying to get more bitches and you doing whatever the fuck YOU want to do, OR we are not going out at all! Imagine taking your own PERSONAL COCK BLOCKER with you somewhere? FUCK THAT! If she's not interested in having sex with me, it's INSTANT **LJBF** and I will describe to her her role in getting me other chicks. I also tell her DIRECTLY that I want to meet all her girlfriends. If she isn't down with that, she's THROUGH! Pretty graphic but to the point, NYC.

The magic of pivots further explained by Johnny Shack : If you are going to the same place all of the time then it is a good idea to meet up with girls and hang in a group. Have you ever noticed how girls pay you obvious attention when you are with a girl? If girls see you with other girls it makes the world of difference. They all of a sudden want to know you. They become a lot easier to start up a conversation with once they have seen you around girls. It's as though you become a prize to them to see if they can manipulate you into their web. They want to see if they can lure your thoughts into their's thus winning out over the girl you are with. Girls are very bitchy and competition between them is played with a completely different set of rules than men. They also feel safe giving you FUCK ME EYES because they know they can tease you and you probably won't approach them. I think sometimes they are living out a fantasy being as forward as they choose to be with guys who are supposedly taken. They know they are being tarty but the beauty of it is that they know no-one will ever find out. If girls know in their minds you will not tell anyone about having sex with them that night then you are half way there if you have the girl interested in you.

## **6 How to handle girls**

### **6.1 Attract girls by being busy**

Let the girls know that you are a busy and important person.

Don Diebel:

- When a girl asks you what you did yesterday, never say, Oh, I just sat around and was bored. Better to say, I was up early to run errands and take care of business, then played tennis, met a friend for lunch, and worked in the afternoon. Lie if you have to. And don't worry, you'll get used to it
- If a girl calls and asks what you are doing, reply with, I just walked in the door or I'm just on my way out to take care of business.
- Don't hang on the the phone for hours talking to girls indicating you don't have anything else to do. Get the business of the call over, be pleasant, then excuse yourself.
- By not calling a girl every night or contacting her every day, you show that you are busy and have other things that are important in your life besides her. This lets her know that she is going to have to compete for your time.
- If you run into someone, be pleasant and friendly. Show that person that you have an interest in her, but then excuse yourself because of having things to do. In this way, you show her that she is going to have to work for your time. You are not easy.

By letting people know that you are a person doing things and active, you suggest a lot to a girl. Certainly, you must be someone who knows where you are going, hence, leadership. You play on her sense of wanting what she can't have because she will have to compete for your time with all of your other activities. You will appear to be different from all the other guys who are hanging on her begging for her time. She will suspect that there are other girls in your life or you wouldn't be so busy. And finally, she is going to have to use her charms to seduce you away from all these other activities - and girls just love a challenge

Craig, Clifford's Seduction newsletter: Make her miss you. But in order for scarcity to be effective you have to be sure of one thing. The time she does spend with you must be absolutely amazing, and without a doubt the best time she could have with anyone. You need to be able to create an awesome, MEMORABLE experience with anyone, anywhere, especially when it really counts.

Also, she can NEVER be the first priority in your life. Always put her second to something, whether it be your family, career, friends, whatever, but leave a small piece of hope in her mind that she could become number 1.

### **6.2 Suggest competition**

When you first get to know a girl, it would be better if she suspects that you are seeing other women as well as her. It makes you more attractive to her and she knows she will have to work hard to get you. Have names and numbers of other girls popping out of your wallet (when paying for yourself of course, not her or have them laying around in your house or apartment or car, don't be desperate for her (best way to accomplish this is to have some 5 other girlfriends at the same time, don't be available at all times, be slightly unpredictable in your actions (this is also good for keeping her on her toes in general

### **6.3 Put a price on yourself**

Ross Jeffries: And one of the most true and powerful realities of human nature is: IF SOMETHING COMES AT VERY LITTLE COST, PEOPLE TEND TO THINK IT IS OF LITTLE VALUE! We believe that things that are difficult to possess are inherently of better quality and that things that are easy to possess are of little value or quality. In other words, absent knowing what something can do for them, people will make a judgement based on what they have to give up to get it. They confuse price with value. I certainly hope that you are smart enough to see the difference. Personally, I judge the worth of something based on what it will do for me. But practically speaking, here are some ways to do it in your behaviour in the field:

1. At the appropriate place and time, SHOW YOUR ANGER! Guys who never get mad, who never show that they will stand up for themselves and make a woman feel a bit of unpleasantness are, in effect, giving themselves away for free! Let the females in your life know that if they break your rules, cross you, or show any lack of respect that THEY ARE GOING TO PAY A PRICE!
2. Be willing to withdraw your time and attention and be unavailable! There are actually two rules working here: one is that people value more what they have to work for, but also the rule is: if it's rare or becoming MORE scarce it's viewed as being more valuable.



Well, in any case, as I've said, it's a reality, so use it in the following ways:

- A. ANSWER: Now and again, cancel dates.
- B. B. Don't always return her phone calls promptly
- C. C. On occasion, and especially in the beginning, GET OFF THE PHONE FIRST! Don't have unlimited time or willingness to talk!

That should get her viewing you as scarce and therefore a lot more valuable and therefore something She's Willing To Pay A Hell Of A Lot More To Get! Now the final, and perhaps the most important rule I can give you is: Let Women (and people in general) Know What Your Rules Are And What You Expect Of Them! Now, I didn't say whine or demand. I just said let them know with the attitude of: Hey, these are the rules. If you care to obey them, great. You'll receive GREAT value in return. If not, please get out of the way because plenty of people are lined up who WILL pay, and gladly so.

Finally on this topic, you should take steps to totally eliminate from your life anyone in any capacity who will not pay your price, after you have clearly informed them what that price may be, and most especially if they have explicitly agreed to pay it. As I have long said, confidence works two ways: both in going for what you do want and moving away from what you don't. If you don't eliminate those who won't pay the price, then you will be undercutting your confidence when you want to move towards what you want, because your behaviour is not 100% congruent with your belief that you are a person of value who is deserving of the best.

Craig, Clifford's Seduction newsletter: Make her put some work into hanging out with you in order for her to value you. Make her come and pick you up, make her spend some money on you, make her call and do you favors, etc. When she does things for you it will justify her own feelings for you and allow them to grow.

#### **6.4 Show a willingness to walk away**

Ross Jeffries: You see, after years of experience and study, I've come to the conclusion that a woman can only experience real passion for if on some level she believes she could do something to lose you! Understand that when you show this willingness to walk away, in any area of your life, it conveys the message that you are the prize to be pursued, that you are the person of value, and they had better take advantage of the opportunity. This is an attitude that will move you forward in any area that's challenging you. By way of contrast, if you show a non-stop, forever and ever devotion to her, and put up with her crap and ambivalence, then where is that tension of knowing she could lose you? Answer: nowhere! And that's why you get nowhere when you put up with this kind of stuff! If you've seen an initially hot relationship grow ice-cold, this is one big reason!

#### **6.5 Use her friends**

Ross Jeffries: Flowers work wonders on young chicks, especially if you give them to her in front of her friends. Always let her friends know (by being, not saying) you are a great guy. Never ever underestimate a girl's desire to make her friends jealous of her man. In addition to that, always let her think her friends want you. Perceived value is why only some baseball cards are worth more than the store you bought them in, when they are all printed on worthless cardboard. And if you want to put a cherry on top you can make slight comments that make her think that just maybe there is the smallest chance you'll go for one of her friends if she doesn't do right by you. Or you can go the other way and do things like say, Your friend Sarah has a huge ass you're so much better looking than her etc. A girl's friends are a fantastic tool.

#### **6.6 Judge her by her actions, not her words**

It happens ever too often. You're with a girl and she SAYS she's gonna have to go home. Once you reach her house, she doesn't seem to have the slightest of intention of leaving you. In silent agreement you move on to take a look at your house Or she SAYS she doesn't sleep with a guy on the first night, or she SAYS it is too soon etc etc. Now these were all positive examples of what she SAYS is necessarily not what she wants or eventually DOES But nothing to complain about, right?

Wrong. Because the opposite is quite common as well - although she promises this and that, makes excuses, is sorry (Oh, I'll call you, Oh, I was so busy, I just didn't have any time!, I lost your number, what was it?, We'll do it next Tuesday, I promise! etc) but NEVER delivers - which can leave an AFC hanging on and hoping 'til retirement and then some.

In the words of Ross Jeffries: WATCH WHAT YOUR PROSPECTS DO AND NOT WHAT THEY SAY! Especially with women who are excellent excuse makers and bamboozlers. The ONLY real key to a prospect being qualified is THE ACTION SHE TAKES! ALWAYS LOOK FIRST AND FOREMOST AT HOW A WOMAN IS TREATING YOU AND IF YOU ARE BEING TREATED WITH PRIORITY AND RESPECT. ONLY THEN LOOK AT THE CHARACTERISTICS AND QUALITIES YOU LIKE IN THAT WOMAN!

One of the primary differences between jerks and nice guys is what they focus on. The jerk is first and foremost focused on how he is being treated and each move he makes is put through the test: will this increase or decrease the priority she gives me?. If the answer is decrease THE JERK DOESN'T DO IT! Nice guys (chronic masturbators) by way of contrast, focus on the characteristics they like in the girl. They ignore or overlook rude behaviour from her. They act to show their appreciation and interest in her rather than to get respect which is why, like Rodney Dangerfield THEY DON'T GET ANY!

### **6.7 Have and reveal secrets**

you've ever wondered, how to reconcile the seeming discrepancy between the two most common things you've heard about women, namely:

- women like mystery in a man
- women like to know secrets about a man

then here's an explanation by Kate Reynolds from Mindlist:

A short time ago there was a thread about revealing secrets as a way to gain rapport. IMHO this really is a great way to establish rapport, but it can be carried too far. I (and perhaps other women) like the idea of layers. Like peeling an onion, we like to think there is always more that we don't know yet. So, sharing a secret is fine as long as you convey the idea that there are lots more - and that you are willing to give some up for a price. I grow bored when I think I know all there is to know about someone.

### **6.8 Use poetry**

Poems will sweep women off their feet. Take them out of your pockets and recite. Or send them in a letter. You can also memorise them if you really want to impress her but even the real poets almost never recite their own poems by heart. By reading them from a piece of paper they can be sure it will be just as beautiful as it was when they created it and instead they can concentrate on the tonality of reciting (which is probably even more important than the poems themselves).

You can turn to classic love-poetry (libraries etc.) or - once you get a grasp of patterns, you can start writing your own poems with the themes and messages that you wish to include.

There is always the moral dilemma of whether to present someone else's poetry as your own. Presenting it as your own will make her feel much more intense about the messages and pictures painted in the poem, but if such insincerity bothers you, it might make you feel that much worse. Then again, being able to make her feel even better should make you feel just as much better about it, so I leave it to thee to decide, how to go about this problem.

If you do present them as your own though, don't forget to add, that you're not really much of a poet and you write extremely seldom and only when you really deeply feel like it. Otherwise she might ask you to write something for HER (she might do it anyway, but this way you at least have an explanation for stalling).

And here are a few poems to get you started:

**- Deleted**

### **6.9 If she compliments you**

Don't be an ignorant bum, thank her: How nice of you to say that, you are a very sweet person. Makes her feel good to have complimented you Don't start playing modest and fending it off oh no, I'm not, no-no-no. But neither should you ungratefully and self-servingly declare That's right, you noticed, finally, good! No.

Just make her feel good having complimented you See David Shade's online seduction for an example of putting it to good use.

### **6.10 Act like the two of you have something really special going on**

Ross Jeffries: Always act and speak as if you two have something really special going on that can't be found anywhere else. This is a good attitude to have all the time. Don't just tell her you do, that gives her a chance to evaluate it and (god forbid) decide that's not the case. Say things like you are glad that you do have such a really special thing going and keep elaborating on the glad feeling. In the back of her mind she'll accept that you do have a special thing going - she has to in order to understand why you are glad (this was also an example of using a presupposition).

### **6.11 Paying her a compliment**

Complimenting a girl is a double-edged sword. It has been known to go great lengths and it has also been known to stop an advance dead in its tracks. Some girls will hang on to a guy who keeps complimenting them no matter what, other girls dismiss a guy that pays them a compliment as just another chump.

More than anything else, whether to compliment her or not depends on how you can pull it off. Being hesitant or bland about your compliment to a girl that usually loves and craves for compliments, can make her frown with scorn and turn her back on you. And being sincerely passionate and unique about your compliment to a girl that usually dismisses complimenters as chumps, can make her fall into your arms with a longing sigh.

Then again, being able to be passionate, sincere and unique, you most probably have no need to resort to paying compliments to win her favour - she is already aching to be with you based on your previous interactions

Should you however choose to compliment her nevertheless, here are a few pointers, which, if nothing else, should at least keep you from straying too far from the path of the perfect seduction

**The first rule of complimenting** - don't compliment the obvious. She knows about the obvious, she has heard compliments about it before and if you do it, you'll automatically be associated with all the chumps that got nowhere with her with their compliments about the obvious. Plus it gives the impression that you're just fishing for some cheap gratitude on her part without caring to invest much anything yourself.

You can make an exception to this rule if there's something about her, that you really like so much, that you just can't bare not to tell her. But in this case don't forget to add a description of why you like what you like about her and how it makes you feel.

**The second rule of complimenting** - do compliment the existent but not so obvious. This makes you stand out as it shows that you've actually invested some thought and have been more perceptive about her than others. When paying the compliment, don't just say you like this and that about her. Describe exactly why you like this and that, describe how this and that about her makes you feel - she'll be listening to you and feeling it alongside you.

**The third rule of complimenting** - compliments tend to linger in the minds of the ones that receive them. The more reason for you to pay only the right compliments. For each time she thinks of the compliment and it was right, she'll think of you in an affectionate manner. And if it was cheap-ass - she'll think of you with scorn. So recognize and utilize the lingering aspect of compliments and only pay her the right compliments (right being defined in the first two rules) to have her feel continuously affectionate towards you

Body compliments are better avoided in the initial stages of your interaction with the girl. Maxim:

It makes me uncomfortable if a guy comments on my body in any way, as in 'You look really good in that skirt.' That's way too familiar for just meeting someone. It's too obvious that you're trying to pick me up. — Karen, 27, St. Paul

But do compliment the parts of her body that you like later in the relationship and she'll adore you for it, for now you are someone whose opinion actually matters to her and thus you have the power to make her happy. So yes, women crave for body compliments just as much or even more than personality compliments, just don't make the mistake of paying those compliments early into meeting her or you'll come off as a horny pervert trying for a cheap pick-up.

### **6.12 Cook for her and date at home**

(Adapted from Don Diebel)

I have heard over and over again from women how their ideal date involves the man cooking them dinner.

The best places to pick up women are those where they go to eat. Women are truly slaves to the sensuality of food. If you make a dinner, you are providing them with sensual pleasure that they will associate with you.

Moreover, there is an air of competence and self-assurance that this automatically gives a man in their eyes. Women LOVE feeling taken care of and provided for (for obvious evolutionary reasons) and you making them dinner brings all of that.

Last, but very much not least, this turns your date instead of an encounter in a public place into a private rendezvous in a place where you can go. right to bed, should she feel like that And believe me, she will

It is disappointing to have the occasional problem where during the date the woman is very much in the mood but during the drive back she slips out of the mood, either due to internal considerations or due to something that happens during the drive back etc. Having the date at home - either by having lunch or dinner there - eliminates the problem

### **6.13 When should you call a woman after having sex with her?**

Don Diebel: Listen up guys. I can't begin to tell you how important this tip is. After you have had sex with a woman you must call her the very next day (this is especially critical for a woman you have just met or very early in a relationship.) So, what's the big deal? It's a very, very big deal to a woman giving her body to you.

It's very special to her and she expects to hear from you the next day. If she doesn't she will feel used and that you don't have any respect for her. The bad thing about this is she may be so upset and angry towards you that she won't care to have intimate relations with you again and that's bad news for you. You really need to call her the next day just out of respect, if for no other reason.

There's an exception to the rule. That is if you really were just using her for sex and don't care to see her again. In other words, a one-night stand. If it really was just a one-night stand, don't lead her on by misleading her into thinking that you care for her and want to start a relationship with her. Just don't call her at all.

#### **6.14 Romantic gifts and things to do**

Don Diebel would suggest using these to win the girl you can't seem to get otherwise. This might be the route to take if you are fixated on just one girl alone. And sometimes, you might even get results with these. Most of the time though, you'll probably just be wasting your time, money and effort. So rather than trying to win a girl over with these, use them as a reward to a girl that has already have proven her worth by getting down with you Don Diebel:

- Name a star in the universe after her. The acclaimed company, International Star Registry will send her a 12 inch by 16 inch parchment (no more than 35 letters) and two sky charts showing its position in the galaxy, which is suitable for framing. The cost is \$48.00 plus \$9.00 for shipping and handling. Call 1-800-282-3333 to place your order.
- Send her a telegram (yes, a telegram!) telling her how much you care about her, how pretty she is, what a terrific person she is, how much you enjoyed your date with her, etc.
- Give her a newspaper published on her birthday or on your special anniversary date. Original newspapers from over 50 cities are available dating back to the year 1880. Each newspaper comes with a protective sleeve. This fantastic and memorable gift is available from Newspaper Archives at 1-800-221-3221. The cost is \$39.50 plus \$6.95 for shipping and handling.
- Send her a postcard with a romantic thought on it. It can be a simple statement like, You're such a special lady and I wanted to let you know, I'm thinking about you.
- Buy a erasable marker and write, I love you on her front windshield of her car (um, but don't use it unless you really do love her). Also, put a paper towel under the windshield wiper so she can wipe it off.
- Buy some post it notes and put them on her bathroom mirror where she is most likely to see them. Write on them things like, I love you or I can't wait to kiss and make love you to again.
- Write her a very romantic love letter and hand it to her and say: I've written this letter to someone very special in my life, could you do me a favour and proof read it for me for any misspelled words before I mail it out?
- Give her a call at work or at home at a time that you know that you will be getting her voice mail and leave her a romantic message such as, I just called to let you know that you're in my thoughts and that I think you are a very special lady.
- Take her on a romantic picnic. Bring a blanket, food, flowers, and champagne on ice.
- This requires some timing to pull this off. Call the radio station you both listen to and dedicate a song to her. Make sure you don't tell her and time it to where you are both listening to the radio station when the request comes on the air.
- By her one of those helium-filled I Love You or Happy Birthday balloons and mail it to her. This will really be an unexpected surprise.
- I saved the classic romantic gift that always melts a single woman's heart for last. Send her flowersit never fails to make a lasting impression on women. And it's so easy to do. Be sure and say something real sweet with the card that is delivered with the flowers.

From time to time it is good to switch off your usual I'm an uncontrollable bad-boy and I never supplicate mode and communicate something really special to her. One excellent idea originated by Rod and presented in Clifford's Seduction newsletter is the following: if you've had something which is generally accepted as bad or miserable happen to you, call her, e-mail her or just plain tell her the following: I may have lost a lot of money at the horse track yesterday or I may have had my car stolen the day before or I may have had some other miserable sh t happen to me quite recently, but I still consider myself damn lucky for knowing you. She'll have tears of joy and endearment bursting out of her eyes and you can expect her rushing to you in no time to thank you for that special thought;) Of course, this will be most effective if she already has some affection for you (after all, this is the Handling the girls section, which assumes that you already have the girl in one form or another), but this could start the melting of the heart of a more distant female acquaintance of yours just as well

You can switch back your no-supplication mode later on. But through all your dealings with the opposite sex, remember what Jennifer Lopez said in answer to a question of what kind of a man she wanted: I want a tough guy, with a soft heart. I'm no Lopez-fan, but seems like she has figured out the desires of the most beautiful of girls pretty good (then again, being one herself, shouldn't be that hard to do).

More romantic things to do. But remember - most of the advice here, especially the money-spending dating-based kind, is meant to be used with a woman (or women you are already romantically involved with (or in some cases, to put it bluntly - sleeping with in order to thank her or show her you care or keep the feelings vibrant and well or make her feel good etc. If however she feels nothing for you yet, you better not hold your breath when trying out the advice in this article to make the initial approach - she might become intrigued, but more likely than not she won't and you'll have her considering your romantic moves only cute at best (which is why you should look elsewhere in this guide for information on how to approach and initiate, because after all, this is the Handling the girls, not Approaching the girls section).

- Write or send her a poem (see Use poetry for more information).
- Send her an e-card. Most men don't care too much for e-cards while most women go gaaga over them, so keep that in mind
- Buy her a special little gift. But be warned - if you buy something expensive, she'll accept it thinking that she's letting you buy her affection, as opposed to her accepting a non-expensive gift from you, which she'll have to justify to herself as caused by her simply liking you. A much more desirable outcome and less expensive;)
- Hide the present somewhere she'll be sure to find it - in the pocket of her coat, in her purse, under her pillow. Upon finding it she'll be in tears of endearment for your unselfish affection for her
- Tell her you'll be late that evening, instead however show up early and take her to a romantic dinner.
- Make her a special Valentine's Day web-page.
- Write her a letter (a real letter not an e-mail and leave it next to her pillow.
- Take her to the zoo or a ride in a boat.
- Cook a special dinner for her.
- Talk to her about your feelings and tell her your fantasies.
- Take a long walk in the park together.
- Read something romantic or erotic together.
- Go somewhere you've always wanted to go together but have never had the time.

### **6.15 Managing many relationships at once**

Chasing other girls while being in a relationship with one girl is perceived as a cruel and insensitive thing to do. And it is - assuming a one-on-one relationship is the norm.

If you have established a one-on-one relationship with one girl and she sees or discovers or hears you chase other girls, it is quite natural for her to assume, that you are doing that to have ensuing one-on-one relationships with those other girls, thus abandoning her and leaving her all alone. She will feel miserable, deceived, unhappy etc and you are the cause of all that.

So have you been cruel and insensitive? Yes. For having chased other girls? No. You have been cruel and insensitive for having established a one-on-one relationship and thus giving her grounds to assume that your chasing other girls will mean the end of your relationship with her. Of course, you can do all the explaining you want with her now, but the fact is - you have been leading her in a false direction.

In order to avoid any such unpleasant consequences, frame your relationship with her the way you would like to see it from the start. If you want to be with her but not with her exclusively, let her know. If she walks then most probably she wouldn't have fitted into your future anyway. If she stays, it has been her decision to accept your terms and now you won't have to worry about keeping your possible adventures a secret from her or how hurt she might feel if they came to her knowledge, she won't have to feel paranoid, jealous or miserable because she knows, that as the two of you are not in a strict, traditional and monogamous one-on-one relationship, a new relationship of yours will not endanger her position the way it usually would, plus, should she feel like it, she is free to pursue any interests of hers without feelings of guilt or shame as well (Don't tell her that last thing though - she might take a you are free to meet other people as well the wrong way, it just too well a known substitute for I'm dumping you, which is not what you mean).

As for the right time to frame the relationship (if a relationship is something you want with her in the first place) - there is no right time. It is however probably best to frame it only after she has had the chance to taste all the goodies that come with being with you (so that she'll know exactly what she'll be missing out on while her sisters are getting it, should she decide to walk but before she has come to expect a traditional relationship with you and especially before her she will start feeling her expectations of a traditional relationship with you being threatened by your more than friendly interactions with various other females (so



that she will not be hurt and can be the judge of her actions now that she has an understanding of the situation).

So if you want relationships but don't want to be confined to them - be discreetly honest, tell her you want her but that you are already engaged in a couple of relationships of a more physical nature, and as those girls also know that neither of them is your only one, so should she, and now that she knows the situation, the decision as to a further course of action (either staying and accepting, or leaving) is up to her to make.

A practical suggestion by Alphahot1, **ASF**: If you're going to be some kinda **player**, know that the average guy can handle roughly about 3 women at any time. That is, not all at once (although that happens too sometimes) but over time, assuming of course that you are COMPLETELY accommodating all 3 (or however many) women.

I have found that a practice that works very well, going with the above figures, is to keep from 5 to 6 women on the string at all times. 3 in active mode and at least 2 or 3 in the **wings**. I have found this to be a very good practice for being assured of being laid almost every night, if you so desire. If any of your 5 or 6 women start to get out of line and start giving you trouble, DUMP her immediately and replace her, always keeping the numbers right about the same.

The key of course here is OPTIONS. Generally, the more options you have, the better off you will always be. Just don't get TOO many - that can sometimes be just as bad or even worse than not having any options at all. So if you have any kind of life whatsoever other than just women, I think you will find TOTALLY accommodating about 3 of them to be just about a full time job.

How to frame the whole situation, when the question of dating many women concurrently does come up with one of the girls. Marcus, Clifford's Seduction Newsletter: It doesn't matter how many people we can share our affections with, but rather it's about how well we can truly be with whom we're with when we're with them.

## **7 Troubleshooting**

### **7.1 Miscellaneous**

#### **7.1.1 She wants YOUR number instead?**

If things come to a close and you have already quite bluntly asked for her number and she gives you the Why don't you give me YOUR number?, there are a few things to consider before you comply.

The most beautiful of girls have a strange little hobby - they collect phone-numbers. **AFC's** are always there to offer them their numbers, so can you blame them? And usually there's even a little competition going on between girls, who gets the most phone-numbers by the end of the evening or week or year. But are they ever gonna use all those numbers? Yes, by making a fire out of all those business-cards or napkins at the end of the day or week or year

That's why you shouldn't ever offer your phone number firsthand and that is why you have to pause and think if she asks for your number without offering hers. She just might be looking at you thinking another sucker, let's see if I can extract a phone number. Then again, she just simply might not feel comfortable giving you her number, but either way - if you only give yours without getting hers in exchange, your chances of ever seeing her again will plummet.

To salvage the situation, you might show her that you're not just another sucker and you're quite aware of the devious little hobby some girls have with respect to phone numbers. She of course will start assuring you, that that is not the case at all with her - tell her she can convince you by giving you her number Or you can bypass the naughty girls with naughty hobbies scenario by replying with something as innocent as: Well I keep a rather hectic schedule, if you call me, you'll probably end up developing a long lasting and fulfilling relationship with my answering machine. I'm in and out a lot. However, with your number I could call you when I was able to actually talk.

#### **7.1.2 If she still refuses to give you her number**

If she seems reluctant to give you her phone-number both after structuring an opportunity for her to offer her number and straight-out asking for it, whatever you do, don't push it. You need to remain polite and safe, like it's no big deal if she doesn't want to give you her number. But that doesn't mean you'll have to write her off in your mind, here's a strategy of covert persistence by Johnny Shack:

Remember: when approaching a woman you have never met you must not be too overwhelming because it can make her back up. If you press the issue much further you will not get anywhere. You must still be persistent however and the best thing you can do if you really want her is this - ask her a couple of times about dating you and if this doesn't work change the subject to idle chit chat.

In this chit chat you have 2 goals.

The first is to make an impression on her what a good guy you are. Women love a guy that can hold some sort of conversation. For some reason women think they are more intelligent than the majority of men. Once you realise this, you need to throw this thought of theirs out the window and show that you are different.

The second goal and more important is to find out where she works. People's favorite subject is themselves and you can run a conversation purely on questions about her. She will almost always answer at least a few of them. Now two of these questions needs to be where does she works and what is her name (note that this is not the AFC-style soo what's your name? and sooo where do you work? line of questioning which leads nowhere and is just testament to the fact that the guy is really desperate to have something, anything to talk about with the babe but can't really come up with anything; no, this time the questions are actually going somewhere, so hold on). You can say Oh by the way my name is Johnny. If she doesn't automatically tell you her's you should ask for it almost immediately after you have given your's. Now instead of asking a bold question like where do you work (the reason this is bold is because you are strangers and sometimes a girl will get defensive if you ask too many direct questions)you say, So what industry are you in?. Wait till she answers then say: Do you like it? Now she may even tell you at this point where or who her employer is but if she doesn't you say: Oh, where do you work from? I know someone that does that and they really love it. Here you are creating an impression that you have something in common with her and she will loosen up and think you are safe to be with. You have also made her feel good that her profession is one that you respect.

Now that you know her name and the place she works in you should be the one that makes the move to leave. It is somewhat important to be the one to make the move to leave to eliminate a possible feeling in her that you may be pestering her (actually she's lucky you are, but strange beings those women are. Its not vital but a good advantage to have made the move first to leave.

(And a couple of days later you can phone the operator of the place she works in and ask for her Remember to introduce yourself and remind her of your encounter a few days before. She might pretend she can't quite remember you or the enconter but you can be certain that she does - she's just testing you if her forgetfulness about you can put you off. Just continue with:)

I'm the guy who came up to you and asked for your phone number at (whereever).

(a simulated response of being curious of how you found her) And how did you find me here?

Remember how you told me who you work for, well I rang the operator to get your number hoping I would find you there. You didn't think I would let you get away that easily did you (remember to smile here, she'll hear it)?

Well now that I have gone to this much trouble the least you could do is accept an invitation to go out with me next week.

(a simulated response of being curious what you have in mind) It would have to be something pretty good to live up to your confidence.

Well, I've been on some dates in the nicest restaurants and the theatre and many of them have been great. But I've also been on a couple of dates where all we did was go and have coffee and they also went great. So it just depends on whether or not we need scenery to make our time together fun and I'm betting we don't. Just leave it to me and I'll think of something we'll both enjoy.

A word of warning on the last statement - the reason for letting the girl know that you have dated before is to create the image that you are a desirable man. It can also put the girl at ease thinking that this idea of going on a date with you is not really a big deal. You don't however want to lead the girl to believe that she is not really that important to you and you are just a guy who goes from girl to girl, so be careful.

### 7.1.3 If she says Why do you ask?

Asking all those questions needed to evoke emotions and elicit values can sometimes result in her asking you a Why do you ask? in return. Be prepared to answer her honestly. Not that you are trying to seduce her using patterns and NLP etc, dumbass! Because what you are really doing, is trying to get to know to her better or rather, give her a chance to show you whether she is the kind of person you should get to know better. And the questions are there only to help and guide her along the way. En example of a conversation preceding that nevertheless ominous question (ASF):

**You:** .remember the things you wanted to say to that person, and the daydreams and thoughts that kept coming in and out of your head about the two of you? Privately, deep inside you - do you remember how you felt?

**Her:** Why do you ask?

**You:** Well. as we are sitting here talking. over coffee. I thought it would be nice . to get to know you. as a person. I remember one girl (doesn't matter if you do or not. I was in college. it was like there was an almost magical bond connecting us. we would even finish each others sentences. I wonder did you ever. feel that way. With me. it is so wonderful. to have that sort of connection. don't you think?

**Her:** Yeah! (or whatever)

And if you get busted while doing an **If she is working:**

**You:** Well, you're working now and I could see you seemed a little tired, so I just wanted to take your mind off your job for a moment and have you imagine something relaxing and sothing right here

#### 7.1.4 If she asks Are you trying to seduce me?

Trying the techniques provided here could sometimes result in the woman asking you with a sly smile:

- Are you trying to seduce me?
- So you enjoy seducing women?
- Have you broken many hearts?
- You're a **player**, aren't you?

Neither Um. yea nor OH-NO! are any good to respond to that with. Rather use the excellent aversion provided by David Shade. **ASF:**

I enjoy getting to know a woman who is intelligent, natural, and who has a child-like curiosity for life. And when I meet such a woman, I would want to enjoy all that life has to offer together with her. And for me there is nothing finer then feeling that incredible connection with someone that you feel so very close to. You just made her feel even better while avoiding a direct answer.

NihgLight9 explains, why neither a yes or a no are good anwers to a question like that. NightLight9, **ASF:** I think mystery is something you want. Being known as a ladies man is good thing with some women, but not others, but having her wonder is probably better than either. If your going after women who are older, more experienced or want to seem older your experience would be a real plus. I see a lot of women who want a guy who has had a few partners, but not a lot. They don't want to train, but they don't want a **player**. Being a **player** makes them not feel like they are special.

#### 7.1.5 Have you ever? gets busted

If she says no to a have you ever?, she's probably young and or or inexperienced. Or wants you to bail Well never mind all that, you can go on with well, neither have I, but my friend Sandra told me, that. and now go in with your original description and take her on a trip like she's never been to before

If she just keeps interrupting and blabbering and won't let you take her on a trip, then, at least according to Ross Jeffries, switching to third person (my friend Christina told me, that she feels.) should do the trick as well. That should shut her up, as it is supposedly rude to blabber about yourself when your conversation partner talks about a third person.

Or, use this one:

Have you ever met someone and instantaneously feel such a complete attraction for him (**sp**), that you feel like you just have to do something about it? It's the kind of feeling, that you just have to get near that guy and you know, that even if you never see him again, you'll be happy with all your choices and you'll always cherish the pleasant memories?

No

Well that's just so interesting, how different people have different experiences, but my friend Lola was just telling me about an experience just like that (now you can go in with describing that experience in even further detail)

#### 7.1.6 Ejecting

You don't always have to close. Ross Jeffries: I don't need to win all the time; I size up a woman's potential and either go for it or move on and cut my losses FAST. Sometimes the best choice is just to say, adios and move on. When you realise that you don't have to win (or close) all the time, then it takes the pressure off and you become much more relaxed. Ironically, and paradoxically, this almost always leads to your winning far more often than you ever imagined possible!

In addition to her not rising up to meet your standards, you could be dealing with a woman who for some reason or another simply isn't interested. So if you are getting none of the signs of her being interested in you in a reasonable amount of time after a reasonable amount of effort on your part to demonstrate personality and entertain her (with the help of using eliciting values, patterns, **GM** style, neghits, telling anecdotes or funny or interesting or intriguing stories etc), you should call it off and eject.

So many uninitiated chumps just linger on forever in the hopes of getting the girl interested, maybe, somehow, at some point which leaves the bored and frustrated woman no other option than ejecting him herself, often ending the interaction on a bad vibe and having wasted both of their times longer than should have been necessary. If however you know when to cut your losses and quit, you have a good chance of ending the conversation when everything is still good (leaving an opening for a possible future interaction), you show that you are not desperate or overeager making you look more desireable (which will further

enhance a possibility of a future interaction) and your time will be better spent looking for and interacting with other girls who know to appreciate you instead of this one who does not etc. You were only offering her a chance and she failed to grab it, but you have no need to push it - you know your stuff is good, so just eject and move on.

Here's an example ejection phrase suggested by Mystery for use in a club or bar situation: The night's young pleasure meeting you.

#### **7.1.7 She cancels a date**

Ross Jeffries:

##### **Scenario 1**

**Her:** I can't make it. I've got a rare tropical disease that's causing me to shrink by the hour.

**You:** (dead silence for as long as it takes for her to talk again. Just say NOTHING!)

**Her:** Hello? Are you there? What's wrong?

**You:** What's wrong is I can't believe the bullshit I'm hearing.

**Her:** What??

**You:** Lookyou made a commitment to spend time with me and now you're blowing me off. You're disrespecting me and disrespecting my time and I'm NOT going to put up with it. My rule is, if someone makes a commitment to me, I expect them to keep it. If they can't keep it, I need to know at least a day in advance so I can make other plans. Got it? If you can live with that rule, great if not, sayanora!

Then, HANG UP!

Now, this may sound extreme, but man does it work well! In fact, she'll probably call back with five minutes and apologise and ask you out! I'm not kidding here; I've seen the hardest, jaded bitches go to giggly little girls, eager to please me when I've done this. It throws some kind of switch in their heads. I guess with some people, you don't really get their attention until You Give Them A Swift Kick In The Ass!

##### **Scenario 2**

You go to pick her up at her place and she either keeps you waiting outside for more than ten minutes, or lets you in and then proceeds to talk on the phone for at least that long while totally ignoring you. Wait for her to finish, and as soon as she does say something like this:

**YOU:** Can I ask you a question?

**HER:** Sure.

**YOU:** Are you being intentionally rude to test me, or are you just an accidental asshole?

**HER:** (mouth dropping open in shock, unable to say anything!)

**YOU:** Don't ever keep me waiting like this again, ok? I'll always treat you respectfully, but I expect the same. Do you understand me?

**HER:** Uh. uh. yes.

**YOU:** Good. Let's see you make it up to me.

And at this point grab her and kiss her passionately. If you can, try to turn this into a fuck then and there. Why give her an evening on the town and reward her rotten behaviour?

#### **7.1.8 If she doesn't return your phone-calls or e-mails**

Things are looking grim if she doesn't seem to be returning a phone-call or an e-mail. But not all is lost yet as it all depends how you proceed from here.

One certain way to mess things up is calling or e-mailing her some more with the message being that although you are just slightly confused as to why she hasn't answered you yet, it's ok anyway, let's try again, here's my number one more time etc. Bad. This is sure-fire method of losing her.

Another way to react is not to react at all - you sent your message, she received it, now it's her turn to act, and if she doesn't, well, too bad. This method lets you keep your integrity and pride, but you could also be losing out on women who either can't seem to be able to make up their minds (but beware, they will definitely decide against you once they receive a supplicating follow-up message from you!) and or are the kind of girls, that know to start behaving only after having received a few slaps from you.

So if hopes were high (you hit it off well, she gave you her number etc, any signals of possible interest you might have received from her will do) but now she seems to have disappeared - show that you WILL NOT TOLERATE such a behaviour, and only because you saw some potential for the two of you are you WILLING to give her ONE LAST CHANCE. But if she dares to fuck up again - it's bye-bye- and bam!-door-slam-time

A sample e-mail or voice message by JJ0 ProB, ASF: Hi (girls name). This is (my name). I wanted to let you know how disappointed I was that you didn't call me back. But, since I saw so much potential for us I thought I would give you one last chance. So why don't you give me a call.

This approach also works if she does return your e-mails and phone-calls, but never seems to have time to actually get together with you. So if she always seems to have some prior engagements or projects or

business or other BS to take care of and never time for you, here's an example of a simple and direct message by Maniac High, **ASF**:

Hi x

So are you going to make time to meet me, or are you always busy? I am free Sunday afternoon btw.

### 7.1.9 If she disrespects you

**MrSex4uNYC, ASF**: At the first sign of disrespect to you OR passing up an opportunity to spend time with you, you dump her. When she calls you wanting to go out or something, you tell her that her behaviour was unacceptable and that the only way you are going to let her hang out with you again is if she (make up whatever shit you want her to do because she broke the rules, fuck, suck, whatever). If all you want from her is a kiss, get that. If all you want is for her to dress sexy, make her do that. If she doesn't agree to your terms tell her don't call you again until you are ready to meet my demands and HANG UP. The point of returning fox is that she is crawling back to you so you have the POWER in the relationship.

Ross Jeffries suggests issuing a warning at first, which is pretty much the same thing - you have to show that you're serious about it: Don't be afraid to call her on bullshit she might pull. Girls will always test your limits so the first time they do, call them on it. Tell her that you won't put up with that shit and not to do it again. NEVER forget you were born without her. And that there are a hundreds more like her and a thousands more that are even better than her.  
from: *source for original post unknown*

Disrespecting you can also be a form of testing you if the chick likes you at first but wants to determine your worthiness or lack of worthiness - she will be testing you in order to find out whether you are a supplicating taking-all-her-shit pussyboy or a man with self-control and the ability to take charge.

**Mr Happy, ASF**: In order to pass such a test (an example of which is cancelling a date), you must:

1. Show that you don't lose your temper over it.
2. Show that you don't whine like a baby over it.
3. Show that it doesn't really phase you.
4. Show that you DO find it disrespectful and that you don't tolerate that.

(4. is the most important point, but you MUST do it in such a way that (1,2,3. are true.  
The age difference problem

First off, you should never anticipate any negative outcomes and that includes anticipating age to be a potential problem. But that doesn't mean you shouldn't be minimizing the risks, and that is why this issue of a yet non-existent problem is addressed here.

Secondly, you should be the perfect man for the woman of your choice despite or even because of your age (for example, if the question of your age does come up, reframe it as a question of whether she is mature enough to be with you). You accomplish being a perfect man by displaying all the right qualities and none of the wrong ones, either through eliciting values, patterning, negging etc, doesn't matter which as long as they do the job - you are the perfect man and whatever your age, it'll only be to your advantage.

But that's ideally and we don't live in an ideal world, so sometimes the fate of a relationship might just be determined by something as trivial as your age. Although in theory the age of the person to associate with should not be a problem, it is undoubtedly a consideration for many women.

Being too young for a woman is a rare occasion and even then rarely a problem, as older women welcome younger guys in their arms quite gladly Being too old for a woman is a much more serious issue, especially with women fresh into womanhood (late teens and early to middle 20s).

So if you anticipate your age might turn into a potential problem, what do you do? Neither do you want to tell her and risk being found out to be too old nor do you want to lie (even if you don't have a problem being unethical, being found out to be a liar can have even worse consequences than being found out to be too old), right?

Here's a suggestion by Mystery, **ASF**: Lie - serious. You only have to lie for the first 2 weeks. Then you let them in on the secret as if only they know not even your MOM knows the truth. Girl's already fucked you. Then the TRUTH brings you closer. Trust me, I KNOW.

If you prefer to keep your integrity and stay honest, the best way to do it is to reframe the problem of whether you are too old to whether she is mature enough. Scot Scinner, **ASF**:

**Her**: Aren't you a little old for me? How old are you?

**Him**: 42.

**Her**: See, I'm 19. That's too big of a difference in ages.

**Him**: It is not a question of the differences in our ages, as it is a question of whether or not you are mature enough to become involved with me.

**Her**: Yeah, right. (or) I mature enoughblah, blah, blah.



**Him:** When you GO INSIDE and THINK about the advantages, of being with an older man, if you could just DO IT NOW, you'll see that there are plenty (continue with patterning).

Razor505, direct contribution: First you always wait for her to bring up the difference (you must know the difference i.e. 15, 17 years whatever). Second listen to whatever she says at this point feed it back to her, then tell her Look, you don't have to imagine how either way it goes we both win, right? (keep talking don't give her a chance to respond) I mean if we just become good friends we win right (don't give her a chance to respond) or if we become more we still win right (keep going) or if we go each our own ways we still win right? And instantly ask something about her. It is very important to say all this as off hand as you can.

#### **7.1.10 Nothing works with this girl**

You've tried patterns, eliciting values, being friendly-touchy-kino, maybe some GM, Smooth, even being a bad-boy hasn't worked. Then just start ignoring her, be rude, if she asks why?, say because you just want to, you'll just do what you want. She just might start making passes on you and if you keep on just ignoring her and pushing her away, it'll make her crazy and eventually you can do whatever you want with her. But don't use it unless really nothing else has worked so far. Remember, she hasn't responded to you favourably, so she's on her way out anyway. But if it now turns out that she is the kind that likes a little kick in the buttocks every once in a while, well good for you

#### **7.1.11 If she says: Let's just be friends, aka LJBF's you**

Ideally, you should never get to a point where a girl is forced to LJBF you - that is when she doesn't want you but you don't seem to be able to take a hint. First of all, you should be able to make most any girl want you anyway, and secondly, should she really be disinterested, you should have moved on long before she has a chance to LJBF you. If however you still happen to wind up in a mess like that, this is what Don Diebel suggests (he should know, he is the dating guy).

Don Diebel: If a girl ever blocks advancing the relationship by saying, No, let's just be friends, say, No, I have lots of friends. See you later. By continuing this type of relationship, you portray yourself as someone who has nothing better to do than hang around with a girl who is not that interested in you. The relationship will never get to where you want to go - to bed for some romance, passion, and sex. And even if by some miracle the relationship did advance to the bedroom, she would be doling out sex - dictating the where, when and how much. If she wants to cut you off at any time, she can and you have to accept it because that is the implied agreement from the start. She is in complete control, hence, she will never be satisfied with you.

If, on the other hand, you walk away from this relationship, you have established that you are the type used to leading a relationship, you have plenty of other girls willing to take you on your terms, and she is losing out. We have seen cases where a man will completely turn around the relationship as soon as a girl sees that he is willing to walk rather than accept something that is not on his terms.

When do you give up on a girl? When do you decide that a relationship is not advancing? When you are the only one making an effort to keep it advancing. If she is not putting energy in to you, take the hint and move on to the next prospect. Don't stay where you're not appreciated. If this situation does occur, try to figure out why. How did she perceive you? What turned her off? Learn from your mistakes.

What to do, if you can see that you're approaching LJBF-land with a girl. Glenn Durden, ASF: Completely and totally cut off all contact with her for a few months. When you come back, you can almost start from scratch. More of a stranger, less of a close friend.

#### **7.1.12 Dealing with rejection**

Ideally, that should never happen. Whatever you did to get rejected (a serious dumb-ass pick-up line, asking for a dance out of the blue, offering to buy a girl a drink, trying a close when all her signs were screaming I'm not interested! etc), you should seriously reconsider your approaches. You are there to make the woman feel good, better than she's ever felt before in her life. Remember, the attitude to have when is Hmm, let's find out how much incredible and ticklish fun this woman can stand. If however you come to a point of being rejected, you have twice failed - for some reason, neither did you make her feel good nor did you notice this fact, which in itself constitutes a second failure.

Nevertheless, getting rejected happens to the best of'em In many cases, they get rejected because they don't really care too much, they see the signs of the girl not being interested, but they push on nevertheless, call that laziness if you wish They know they can get any girl anyway, even this one, if they tried a little more or a little less or a different approach etc. But they just don't care, maybe she'll turn around eventually anyway, and if not, who cares. From time to time however, rejection gets even them by surprise This is how some of them deal with it.

**ASF:**

Say It's been a pleasure meeting you. Say it like you really really mean it - in a friendly, respectful yet empathic manner. This way:

- you'll make her see that her behaviour didn't get to you one bit, you don't NEED her company, you just offered her a chance to be in your company
- you'll set yourself apart from all the losers who leave mumbling bitches, they're all the same. after having struck out
- you'll remain cool, confident, a gentleman in good humour. And she'll feel crappy after realising SHE just lost YOU!

Or if she has simply ignored you, add didn't realise you were deaf

Ross Jeffries: I never attach excess meaning to winning or losing with women. What I basically I mean is to realise that if a woman accepts you, it doesn't mean that the next one will, so stay on your toes, and don't get lazy or sloppy. And if she rejects you, it just means that the approach you tried, at this particular time, with this particular woman, hasn't worked yet. It might work at another time with her, or you may just need another approach. Even if it doesn't, as I once told a friend of mine who only thought he saw me get rejected I never get rejected. I only discover if a woman has good taste!

The good thing about using patterns if they're new to you, from the [article in Playboy](#): Parroting someone else's words, it didn't feel like my ego was on the line the way it normally is. Maybe that's the key. If I don't get over with her, it won't be a personal rejection of me. She just didn't go for the material. In the language of Jeffries, I'm on a fishing trip, and I want to see if I can land something quickly. I'm not going to get hung up on any one fish.

More about dealing with rejection from the same article: Truth is, most successful seducers I've known don't hit for a high average. James Toback, the writer and director of The Pickup Artist, whom I met in Los Angeles in 1980, was as compulsive and tireless in his pursuit of women as anyone I've ever seen, and a lot said no. But Toback told me he never took rejections personally: If someone didn't respond to me, the only effect was to make me think I was wrong about her, that I had made a mistake. As Jeffries says, The difference between losers and winners is that losers don't fail enough. And he's right. You have to step up to the plate. If it's not your natural inclination, then having a strategy is helpful and using suggestive language is good. Even if the NLP stuff is a gimmick, a lot of late-night hooey, you'd be better off out there using it than you would be at home in front of the television, watching the infomercial.

Ross Jeffries's attitude: The worst that can happen, is that you find out some girl doesn't want to play with you. Remember - you were about to give her a fantastic gift (be it through patterns or an orgasm of a lifetime. If she turns you down - poor girl, she doesn't know what she just lost

Mr Happy, ASF: Rejection is a good thing, not a bad thing. The more I get rejected, the more I will get laid. I learn something every time. If a woman rejects me it just shows how stupid she is. My gain, her loss.

The reasons for a girl to reject you according to Johnny Shack. Keep in mind though, that Mr Shack seems to prefer the numbers game without wanting to do much individual groundwork of making the girls like him beforehand. He just presents himself as best he can, makes his offer as sincere and compelling as he can, and if rejected, turns to these reasons in his mind:

There are only three reasons that will cause a rejection. Believe in them and you will be unbeatable!

1. She has a boyfriend.
2. She already wants a friend of your's.

3. She doesn't have the confidence to say yes. You need to work out whether you want to chase this woman or not. Many women really do not feel they are good enough to be asked on a date and therefore automatically say no. She may also have been burn't by some guy recently or in the past and this attributes to her lack of confidence. The problem the woman faces is that the longer she goes on with this and doesn't face her fears then the more like vinegar she becomes. Also many women for various reasons have this idea that by not going out with anyone it makes them more desirable. I think it just grows cobwebbs!

So guys you really don't know what is going on in their minds. If they say No then the logical way is to remember these three points. It stops you losing confidence. Remember that your state of mind is determined by the information you feed it with.

### 7.1.13 But I really want this girl!

No, this is exactly the wrong attitude. If she is your only prospect, the one you're thinking about day and night, you keep playing different scenarios of approaching her and making her like you in your mind over and over again - that's called desperation. And it'll show. She's gonna see it (consciously or subconsciously) and nothing repels girls more than a desperate guy. That's why you have to be chasing multiple girls at any given time, so if one of them gives you trouble, the heck with her, you have other girls wanting to be down with you

But the really good part is this - the ones giving you trouble can sense instantly that you're not phased by it, you're displaying none of the usual signs of despair, heart-ache, supplication etc. You just don't give a damn, you just don't have time to give a damn, you're got too much action going on elsewhere. Guess what? This is exactly what suddenly makes you desirable in their eyes Mystery: Notice how a man who gets girls gets MORE girls while a man who has nothing continues to get nothing?.

A standard question in **ASF**: I really-really want this girl, she is so special, what can I do to make her want me!?

A standard answer in **ASF**: Make love to at least 10 other girls, then see if you still want this girl and think she is so special

Mr Happy, **ASF**: Do not ever fixate on any one woman, it turns her off. To lay her, she must believe that you like to fuck women, that you would like to fuck her, but that you don't NEED her because you have all kinds of women all over you.

(The good way to gain such an attitude is to) go out and approach 12 women a day, 4 days or nights a week. That's 48 women a week. Your skills will undergo massive improvement with such practice. You should always be able to blow off any woman to go pick up another one. If you won't put in the effort, you will not get the results. And if you won't even put in the effort, then you are a pussy and evolution is weeding you out. If you DO put in the effort, you WILL improve and get great results.

Allen Thompson, Don Juan newsletter:

Obsessing about a particular girl, and whether or not she likes you, is the KISS OF DEATH! If you're worrying about whether a girl likes you or not, chances are she doesn't - or rather, SHE WON'T. She won't because your worry and your obsession with what she thinks of you will actually push her away. When you let yourself fall into the obsession trap, you begin to analyze everything your dream girl does, every word she says, every move she makes and try to relate them all to you. She smiled at you - she didn't smile at you. She emailed you - she didn't email you. She returned your call - she didn't return your call. Confusion, frustration, and anxiety result.

And not just for you. If she comes to know that you're obsessing about her, she will also know, that you'll be analysing her every move in relation to you. Which will invariably make her uncomfortable. She can't be herself anymore, she can't relax and feel free in your proximity or company. Knowing that you're obsessing, she will feel anxiety, discomfort and maybe even fear when you're around. And on all occasions, she will want to get away, further away from the source of her anxiety, further away from you.

Well, but there's this rather slight and slim possibility, that she's also obsessing about you, right? I mean, people sometimes do end up with people who have initially been obsessed about them, and they live happily ever after, right? Yeah right, in fairy-tales they do. In real life however, if you want her, do something, anything, preferably of course something suggested elsewhere in this guide, and quick. But once you let yourself become obsessed and act under the influence of that - you're doomed. And this is also where the standard **ASF** suggestion of spend some intimate time with ten other girls before you get back to this special girl again stems from. Because once you're accomplished that, you'll ease up on the obsession, you will feel relaxed and comfortable (and as moods are contagious, so will she), she in turn will be more comfortable about getting close to you, and now that you're filled with calm confidence (heck, even if she doesn't dig me enough, I've just been with ten girl and can get laid at will anyway, so let's just have fun with this) you will be able to handle her more proficiently etc.

## **7.2 The boyfriend problem**

### **7.2.1 If she says she has a boyfriend**

Don't ever, never, ever ask if she has a boyfriend! Maybe she does, maybe not - so what, who cares?

Maybe she does, but wants to have a little fun - your prompting about a possible boyfriend will put her off the mood, she'll move on to another guy and get what she came looking for anyway. Or maybe she does, but is also pretty curious about you and wouldn't want the existence of a boyfriend scare you away. She might even be considering dumping him in favour of you. Once you've extracted that information from her however, she might just write you off in her mind.

If however she blurts it out without prompting, it still doesn't mean anything. Maybe she really thought she wanted to scare you away, but she really didn't know what she was doing Take it humorously, be light-hearted and give her another chance

#### **Examples:**

**HB**: Sorry, but I have a boyfriend.

You: Laughing Hey, I just met you and you are already telling me about your problems?

**ASF**: If I ask her to meet me somewhere and she says But I have boyfriend, I answer with If he makes you happy, then you could bring him along. Then I ask, Does he make you happy?. I decide if I should follow up based on the response. Most have had some complaints about him which gives me something that I can work with later and a topic of discussion.

Maniac High, **ASF**: (One reason she might be saying she has a **BF** is that) she really does have a **BF**, likes you, but doesn't want to feel guilty about cheating on her **BF**. This is classical chick logic at work here and is good, because it means you are on your way to a fuck, even in spite of the **BF** Basically this happens because she thinks that if she tells you about the **BF** now, she can relax and let you fuck her anyways,

since its not her fault now that she fucked you, because, she did tell you about the boyfriend, and you ignored it, ie. she had no choice in the matter.

Use this one if the boyfriend comes up for the first time in the conversation. If she keeps insisting on it, move on to any other boyfriend smashing-bashing technique described in this guide. Mystery, ASF:

HER: I have a boyfriend.

ME: That's nice so anyway .

REASONING - ignore the topic and so will she.

Aaron R. Kulkis, ASF:

Her: I have a boyfriend

You: Thats good - I'm not really looking for a girlfriend either

Comments by Alphahot1, ASF: Try to say it as congruently as possible and with no sarcasm. Now you have put her a little more at ease and consequently, she will be more open to you. NOW, proceed to SS the fuck out of her with everything you can hit her with. After about 15 or 20 minutes, you won't have to worry about any boyfriend. Because she will now want YOU to be her boyfriend! Plain and simple.

### 7.2.2 Alienating the boyfriend in her mind

Taken from Sweep women off their feet:

We all know that not one person in this world is perfect. If you begin talking about relationships, feel free to discuss the little things that bother people in a relationship in general and later get her to give you examples of some of the things that bug her about her boyfriend or husband. At first she may not say much, but if she can relate to the day to day problems in a relationship that you describe in general the more likely it is for her to agree with you on some points. When she does you can get her to be more specific. Once there's a crack, amplify it.

At first sympathize with the situation and somehow try to find the positive in it, and how her boyfriend or husband can justify that particular behavior through love and so on. But slowly and surely as the negatives of the situation are amplified, abandon your understanding for her boyfriend or husband's behavior and begin to offer her an alternative. Tell her how you think things should be and make sure they favor her. Begin to act exactly as she would love her husband to act while still intensifying her disappointment (if not anger) with him. Now's the time to be there for her, and once you've successfully alienated her boyfriend or husband (even if only for the moment) begin your seduction from either the interest or even desire stage. When it comes to the last stage of your seduction, try not to bring up the boyfriend again unless she's the one who brings it up, and if she does, just re-enforce that alienation.

Along the same lines, when you are trying to alienate the boyfriend or husband, you should never say that they are bad and you are good, just show them how you think a wonderful relationship should be and how certain behavior exhibited by their boyfriends or husbands is at the very least questionable in a loving relationship. Questioning specific behavior is the easiest and fastest way to cast doubt over the entire relationship or at the very least his feelings for her.

For example, if a girl goes out with her friends on a girl's night out without her boyfriend, just question his desire to be with her. At first she will be happy and loving towards him because he is understanding and giving her the independence she needs, but when you question his motives for it she will begin to question them too.

I know it's great to be able to go out with your girlfriends and have a good time, but would he not want to be here with you and enjoy your company and perhaps dance with you and kiss you at the right moment when a slow dance ends?

We both need some independence and he understands that I need to see my friends once in a while too.

I understand independence and it's great, but being as beautiful as you are, is he not a bit jealous not knowing how many guys out there might try to pick you up, or does he not care about that possibility?

He trusts me.

Does he encourage you to go out with your girlfriends often? You know my first impression would be that you are such a lucky girl to have such a wonderful boyfriend or husband, but my nature just won't let go of certain things that sound off tiny little alarms. Have you ever called him on your night out? Is he even there, or is this a good chance for him to go out with his buddies too?

Even if he is, what's wrong with that? I'm out here with my friends?

Yes, but you're not guys. Do all his buddies have girlfriends and just go out for a drink? Or do they go out to pick up some girls? I'm not saying that he would do that, but if his buddies are, what exactly is he doing with them?

I must say that I admire that you have such an open relationship, I don't know if I could let you go if I had a girlfriend like you. I think I'd want to spend as much time with you as possible. How can anybody ever get tired and need a break from seeing you and whispering sweet little nothings in your ears? I guess I just don't understand, but it sounds like he must be a great guy. I'm sure that he is the kind of guy who would.(describe



the most wonderful and romantic things a guy could possibly say and do to a woman), otherwise I know he wouldn't stand a chance of being with a girl like you. I know you must be the kind of girl who wouldn't settle for anything less and would never expect anything less from a guy. You are so lucky.

I'll tell you, a guy who would ever take you for granted even in the smallest way would have to be too selfish to even realize what he's got. But I know someone like that would definitely lose out to the competition because I'm sure any red-blooded guy in this world would do just about anything to be with a girl like you, and I'm not just saying that, I can point out a number of guys that have been just staring at you all night.

It must be such a wonderful feeling to know that you are admired, loved and appreciated isn't it? And I'm not talking about those guys, but the one at home, who in my mind questionably still isn't here with you.

If she goes to the phone at any time throughout the evening, that's a good sign. She's starting to question some of those things too and is looking for reassurance hoping that he is home. If he is home, chances are that the conversation will not go very well especially if he can hear the loud party atmosphere in the background. In addition if you were able to plant even the smallest seeds of jealousy in her mind, she will act in a way that would cause him to be defensive on the phone. If for some reason they have even the smallest fight, you've got a chance. Start treating her like she would like her boyfriend to treat her, and work on those desires and romance.

### 7.2.3 Boyfriend-smashing techniques

by NYC

Whether she has a boyfriend or not is IRRELEVANT UNTIL you decide you are going to fuck her. Then you either need to bring him up and press her for the information where her relationship is lacking OR make her recall her boyfriend and how good he makes her feel and usurp the feelings for yourself.

If she injects the boyfriend into the conversation unsolicited, a simple diversion to whether or not she plans to marry him might be in order. I always use it if I decide NOT to bring him up and get her to talk about him favourably.

Another thing I like to use if she is DEFENSIVELY bringing up her boyfriend is so where is he tonight? If she doesn't have a good excuse like he is working late because he is a stock trader, I play her into a he's cheating on you right now mentality. Chicks can't stand that. PLUS they have to carry this with them from now on. I break down their BELIEF in what their boyfriend TELLS THEM he has to do.

Whether they believe me or not is irrelevant because they don't know me. All they do know is that they now have an alternative version of what their man is doing tonight and every night that he is not with her. After that sinks in, I talk about wasting time and wasting your life and passing up opportunities to do what you REALLY WANT TO DO just because of some bullshit you told someone one day, like I am only going to fuck you when they are out doing whatever they want. Then I bring up chicks that got cheated on and how stupid they felt when they were telling me about how they got played

You can see how it just strings along and breaks their BELIEF in their man. adding the effects of alcohol, you often get a flirtatious effect from the chick deciding to get him back for cheating when he was at work the whole time

Use ex-boyfriends: the chick had a BF, but wasn't satisfied with him. I took her back through a meta-state tour of her ex-boyfriends. The guys that really turned her on I brought her back to frequently. Basically, her boyfriend paled in comparison, and she remembered how HORNY she used to feel with guys and she just doesn't get that with him anymore. Suddenly, she wants a little kino shoulder massages, back rubs, holding her from behind and kissing her neck

Basically, if she claims a BF and that doesn't make you want to bail immediately make her remember past boyfriends make her remember that she broke up with them make her remember that they were better lovers than her current BF make her long for guys that she CAN'T POSSIBLY GET HER HANDS ON but she remembers being in their arms and how much she wanted to please them and how much she wanted them to touch and please her. Once she realizes that boyfriends are a passing thing, she will NOT want to waste the opportunity to get a blessed release from all the sexual feelings you have just aroused in her and YOU'RE IT!

## 8 Miscellaneous

### 8.1 Fun and games

**The kissing bet.** An old trick, you can also use it with or without the GM technique. ASF: Tell the girl that you will bet her a dollar (or a drink is nice) that you can kiss her without using your lips or your tongue. Girls usually think (know) that your up to something, so sometimes it takes a little convincing to get them to take the bet. They will take it about 1 or 3 of the time. If the girl is a good friend and she doesn't take the bet, say Ok. Fine Just check out this trick I learned you can use it to make money off people, then play it off like your



doing her a favour by showing her this (Trust me you are). Then if she accepts the bet or you offer to show her the trick do this: Say: Ready! Watch this! Then move in like you are going to kiss her on the lips. Ok this is fucking important. When you reach the point of no return you absolutely MUST lay the smoothest and I mean the smoothest smack on her she has ever experienced. Then say God Damn you're a good kisser! I guess I owe you a buck! If your kiss is smooth enough this will most definitely lead to more kissing and maybe even a child if your a real asshole. (If you need a good line here say I don't think that kiss was worth more than 50 cents, you owe me another).

**Osama - the king.** A Japanese version of truth or dare. Everyone shows their hand with the amount of extended fingers forming a number from one to five. The numbers are added up and the resulting numbers are counted clock-wise from the last king (or from the one the added up the numbers if the game has just begun). The one who ends up with the final number will be the next king and can truth or dare any other two **players** to do anything

**A-hole + truth or dare.**  
**ASF:** Remember how easy it was to kiss girls playing truth or dare in high school? Well, guess what it still works with college age women Except now you're fucking! My **wingman** and I use this every time we bring girls back to my house. We always end up banging our chicks of choice, but the best part is you get to do freaky shit with both of them! Not to mention that the lesbian action (unavoidable when playing with me!) is a great way to psyche yourself up for some serious sex.

We make a plan about what and who we are gonna do before we start and prep each other with good dares and truths. DO NOT play this without whip cream this is the most important accessory you will need. You will be amazed when you see how turned on a girl can get just by liking whipped cream off her stomach. Start off with little stuff like kisses and then move up to licking whipped cream off nipples, dry fucking, lapdances, and the closer Dare your **wing** to go in a room with one of the chicks for 5 minutes and see what happens. At this time grab the other girl and wear out your carpet. At this point the girls will be so turned on from the licking and kissing that you can basically do whatever you want with them. When you're alone in the room you can be like, I dare you to let me come in your mouth etc.

Sounds great so far right? But your worried about how to get the game started. You cant just say, Ok, time for truth or dare. To the girls it sounds more like, Ok, time for us to use you for our sexual entertainment. You have to sneak them into it. My recipe goes like this: start off with the greatest drinking game of all time, Asshole, to get them nice and liquored up. Then move on to the game I'm about to describe.

Throw out any cards below an 8. Take the rest and spread them in a circle around the biggest cup you can find. Now you take turns drawing cards.

8 = Band Names. Go around the table saying band names. Each name has to start with the last letter of the previous name. For instance, I say Vanilla Ice, the next person says Eric Clapton, next person says Nine Inch Nails. If you cant think of one in ten seconds then you drink and the next person draws a card.

9 = Truth. You can ask whoever you want.

10 = Person to the left drinks for 5 sec.

Jack = Dare. Whoever you want.

Queen = Everyone drinks for 5 count.

King = Fill up the huge cup with 1 or 3 of the way full with whatever you are drinking. The person who draws the last king has to pound whatever nasty mixture ends up in the cup. After a few rounds you will start running out of band names since you can't say the same one twice. Wait till one of the girls cant remember a band name then say, Lets just play truth or dare. They will happily agree if your dares and truths were exciting and getting them horny.

My **wing** and I played this thursday night with 3 girls and 4 guys. At the beginning of the night the girls actually asked me if they could stay over so they didn't have to drive home drunk! After much a serious truth or dare session with tons of sexual acts, I dared my **wing** to go in a room for 5 min with one of the chicks and see what happens. They never came out. It was getting late and I had to work the next morning. I tossed the other two girls some blankets and said, You two can sleep in my bed if you want, but dont be thinking we're gonna hook up and shit cause I really gotta get some sleep. 10 minutes later one of the girls cruises into my room, jumps in bed with me and starts kissing me. She was about an 8 but it was 3:30 so I told her I had to sleep and to leave her number and we would continue this the next night. In the meantime my brother has gotten the 3rd chick into his room and my other friend is spanking hank in my bathroom.

I've never played this game before without all the girls willing to bang at the end, whether they have boyfriends or not. I got the idea a year ago when I was asking a girl if she had ever had a lesbian experience. She told me that the only time she ever did was in a crazy game of truth or dare when she got dared to eat some girl out for 5 min. Neither of these girls were bi before it happened. This just goes to show that the possibilities are endless!

## 8.2 Bad jokes

A few bad jokes to go with your **GM style**

**Pants in the air.** Hey girls, do you know how you can tell whether you liked us? No? Well tonight, when you get back to your hotel or dorm, and you remove your panties, throw them in the air and if they stick to the ceiling or wall, then that means that you liked us! (Nathan Szilard, **ASF**: I couldn't fucking believe it, the girls laughed hysterically!

**The telepathic watch.** You can act this one out with her or tell it as a joke as a safer alternative. A rather confident man walks into a bar and takes a seat next to a very attractive woman. He gives her a quick glance, then casually looks at his watch for a moment. The woman notices this and asks, Is your date running late? No, he replies, I just bought this state-of-the-art watch and I was just testing it. The intrigued woman says, A state-of-the-art watch? What's so special about it? It uses alpha waves to telepathically talk to me, he explains. What's it telling you now? Well, it says you're not wearing any panties. The woman giggles and replies, Well it must be broken then, because I am wearing panties! The man starts tapping on the watch face and says, Damn thing must be an hour fast!

**The spermogram.** This one is very usable separately as well, but better not use it before you've made sure the girl is or would be comfortable with sexual innuendoes. A guy goes to a hospital to get a spermogram. The doctor gives him a glass and ask him to fill it up. He goes home to try it with his left hand, try it with his right hand and nothing. He asks for his wife to help, she tries with her left hand, her right hand, her mouth, and nothing. Then again, he asks for his daughter to help, she tries with her left hand, right hand, mouth and nothing. He asked for her neighbour to help, a real **HB**, she tries all that and nothing. Then, he goes back to the hospital and tells the doctor: Give me another glass. Nobody can open this one!

**Rating system explained.** This one is quite harsh for a girl and not because of the sex-theme but rather because of the rating girls theme. Even while laughing at this joke, she's bound to think I wonder what she rates ME?. Of course this could have her imagine all sorts of fun stuff like I wonder if I'm 8 or if he'd eat me? but more probably than not, rating her, even if only hypothetically, is a major turn-off for a girl. So you'd better use quoting if you just have to tell this one (I can't believe it, my friend just told me this stupid joke.

Rating system explained:

7 You'd Fuck Her

8 You'd Eat Her

9 You'd Eat Her After You Fucked Her

10 You'd eat her after your Buddy Fucked Her!

**Hurdles.** What's this: Grab your upper lip with one hand, lower lip with the other, and pull upper to left, lower to right, then upper to right, lower to left, repeat 5 times, then open mouth a little wider while doing same for one repetition, then 5 more repetitions as above. Answer: view from below of girl doing 100 meter hurdles.

**In a loud club.** Not actually a continuation of the **GM** technique and you won't get her with this one, but it'll probably cheer you up a little nevertheless

**You:** Do you want to dance?

**Her:** (looking at you like a piece of shit she just stepped in) no

**You:** (looking confused then) oh no no no no no, I SAID. YOU.LOOKFAT.IN THOSE.PANTS pointing

A modification in case you get snuffed asking the girl for a dance.

**He:** Hey Baby wanna dance?

**She:** No.

**He:** Oh, C'mon! Lower you're standards a little. I did

**Doctor's appointment.** One night, as a couple lay down for bed, the husband gently taps his wife on the shoulder and starts rubbing her arm. The wife turns over and says: I'm sorry honey, I've got a gynaecologist appointment tomorrow and I want to stay fresh. The husband, rejected, turns over and tries to sleep. A few minutes later, he rolls back over and taps his wife again. This time he whispers in her ear: Do you have a dentist appointment tomorrow too?

**Voodoo dildo**

(Here's a great joke to tell a woman you ALREADY have good rapport with or already know well. Notice how it uses embedded commands to get her all hot and horny)

This guy is leaving town on business for a week and he's starting to get a little worried. You see, his wife is a nymphomaniac, and he knows that as soon as he leaves, she'll start to GET VERY HORNY and think to herself, YOU'VE GOT TO GET SOME. So he goes to the adult toy shop to check out what they've got. And he notices there's an ornately carved wood box behind the counter. So he asks the salesman what it is, and the salesman says, Oh that's the voodoo dildo. Here let me show you. So the salesman opens the box, and there, lying on a bed of red velvet is what looks like an ordinary vibrator. The salesman says, Watch this! Voodoo dildo-door! The voodoo dildo rises from the box and flies across the room and begins banging like crazy against the keyhole! Before it can break the door down, the salesman says, Voodoo dildo-box! and the dildo soars back and gently lands in its box.

Well, needless to say, the guy HAS to have the voodoo dildo! At first the salesman refuses but after an hour of haggling and \$1000, the man walks off with the magic dingus. He explains how it works to his wife, and kissing her goodbye, sets off on his trip. Now, she resists using it for two days, but finally, she starts to

FEEL THE HORNINESS BUILDING INSIDE. She can't take it anymore, so she opens the box and says, Voodoo dildo-my pussy! The voodoo dildo slams into her and begins pumping her in every conceivable position and angle. She can't believe the power and precision; she's getting it with exactly the right strokes, exactly the right angles, exactly the right pressure and she starts to HAVE ORGASM AFTER THUNDERING ORGASM.

After two hours, she can't take it any more, but she can't pull the damn thing out! The harder she tries, the more it seems to change its shape and adapt to her, to fill her exactly the way she needs to to drive her to WANT IT MORE AND MORE AND MORE WITHOUT STOPPING! She tries calling 911, but they don't believe her! So she decides to drive herself to the hospital. As she's headed down the road, she's moaning in pleasure and desire, because the dildo keeps making her HAVE UNBELIEVABLE ORGASMS. Because she's swerving all over the road, a motorcycle cop pulls her over! The cop wants to know if she's been drinking, and she says, Officer! wasn't drinking! It's all because of the voodoo-dildo!

And the cop says, Voodoo dildo, my ass!

#### **Short takes**

QUESTION: Why is air a lot like sex?

ANSWER: Because it's no big deal unless you're not getting any.

QUESTION: Why did Frosty the Snowman pull down his pants?

ANSWER: He heard the snow blower coming.

QUESTION: What's the difference between light and hard?

ANSWER: You can sleep with a light on.

QUESTION: Why is sex like a bridge game?

ANSWER: You don't need a partner if you have a good hand.

QUESTION: What do a Christmas tree and a priest have in common?

ANSWER: Their balls are just for decoration.

**Laying Off** Mr. Smith owned a small business. He had two employees, Sarah and Jack. They were both extremely good employees - always willing to work overtime and chip in where needed.

Mr. Smith was looking over his books one day and decided that he wasn't making enough money to warrant two employees and he would have to lay one off. But both Sarah and Jack were such good workers he was having trouble finding a fair way to do it. He decided that he would watch them work and the first one to take a break would be the one he would lay off.

So, he sat in his office and watched them work. Suddenly, Sarah gets a terrible headache and needs to take an aspirin. She gets the aspirin out of her purse and goes to the water cooler to get something to wash it down with. Mr. Smith follows her to the water cooler, taps her on the shoulder and says, Sarah, I'm going to have to lay you or Jack off.

And Sarah says, Can you jack off? I have a headache!

**The Gift.** A young man wanted to purchase a gift for his new sweetheart's birthday, and as they had not been dating very long, after careful consideration, he decided a pair of gloves would strike the right note: romantic, but not too personal. Accompanied by his sweetheart's younger sister, he went to Nordstrom and bought a pair of white gloves. The sister purchased a pair of panties for herself.

During the wrapping, the clerk mixed up the items and the sister got the gloves and the sweetheart got the panties. Without checking the contents, the young man sealed the package and sent it to his sweetheart with the following note:

I chose these because I noticed that you are not in the habit of wearing any when we go out in the evening. If it had not been for your sister, I would have chosen the long ones with the buttons, but she wears short ones that are easier to remove.

These are a delicate shade, but the lady I bought them from showed me the pair she had been wearing for the past three weeks and they were hardly soiled. I had her try yours on for me and she looked really good.

I wish I was there to put them on for you the first time, as no doubt other hands will come in contact with them before I have a chance to see you again.

When you take them off, remember to blow in them before putting them away as they will naturally be a little damp from wearing.

Just think how many times I will kiss them during the coming year. I hope you will wear them for me on Friday night. All my love.

P.S. The latest style is to wear them folded down with a little fur showing.

**Italians.** A bus stops and two obviously Italian men get on. They seat themselves, and engage in animated conversation. The lady sitting behind them ignores their conversation at first, but her attention is galvanized when she hears one of the men say the following:

Emma come first. Den I come. Two asses, they come together. I come again. Two asses, they come together again. I pee twice. Then I come once more.

You foul-mouthed wop swine, retorted the lady indignantly. In this country we don't talk about our sex lives in public!

Hey, cool down lady, said the man. I was only tellin' my friend here how to spell Mississippi.

**Newly Weds.** There were these newly weds that were both virgins and nervous about the wedding night. Finally when it came, the wife took off all of her clothes and went under the covers while her husband took off his clothes one by one. First he took off his socks and his toes were messed up. His wife says What happened to your toes? He says I had toelio. She says You mean polio?, but he said, No, toelio. Then he takes off his pants and the wife sees that his knees are all banged up and weird. The wife says What happened to your knees? He says I had kneaseles. And she says You mean measles? and he says No, kneaseles. Finally he took off his underwear and she says Let me guess small cox?

**The Bet.** A little old lady goes to the Bank of Canada one day carrying a bag of money. She insists that she must speak with the President of the bank to open a savings account because it's a lot of money. They finally get her into the president's office and he asks her how much she would like to deposit. She says she has \$165,000 and then dumps it out of the bag onto his desk. The president was surprised and of course curious as to how she came by all this cash, so he asks her. The old lad says, I make bets. The president replies, Bets? What kind of bets? and she says, for example, I'll bet you \$25,000 that your balls are square. Ha! says the president, That's a stupid bet, you can never win that kind of bet. The old lady says, So, would you like to take my bet? Sure, says the president, I'll bet \$25,000 that my balls are not square! The little old lady says OK, but since there is a lot of money involved is it OK with you if I bring my lawyer with me tomorrow at 10:00 AM to witness? Sure says the president. That night the president got very nervous about the bet and spent a long time in front of a mirror checking his balls, turning from side to side, again and again, thouroughly checking them out until he was sure that there is no way his balls are square and that he will win the bet. The next morning at 10 AM the little old lady appears with her lawyer at the president's office. She introduces the lawyer to the president and repeats the bet, that \$25,000 says the president's balls are square. The president agrees with the bet again and the old lady asks him to drop his pants so they can see. The president does this. The little old lady looks closely at his balls and then asks if she can feel them. Well, OK says the president, \$25,000 is a lot of money, so I guess you should be absolutely sure. Then he notices that the lawyer is quietly banging his head against the wall and he asks the old lady, What is wrong with your lawyer? She replies, Nothing, except I bet him \$100,000 that by 10 AM today I'd have The Bank of Canada's president's balls in my hands!

**The Camel.** A Captain in the foreign legion was transferred to a desert outpost. On his orientation tour he noticed a very old, seedy looking camel tied out back of the enlisted men's barracks. He asked the Sergeant leading the tour, What's the camel for? The Sergeant replied, Well sir, it's a long way from anywhere, and the men have natural sexual urges, so when they do, we have the camel. The Captain said Well, if it's good for morale, then I guess it's all right with me. After he had been at the fort for about 6 months, the Captain could not stand it anymore, so he told his Sergeant, BRING IN THE CAMEL! The Sarge shrugged his shoulders and led the camel into the Captain's quarters. The Captain got a foot stool and proceeded to have vigorous sex with the camel. As he stepped, satisfied, down from the stool and was buttoning his pants he asked the Sergeant, Is that how the enlisted men do it? The Sergeant replied, Well sir, they usually just use it to ride into town.

**Superman.** One day Superman is really horny and sees Wonder Woman sunbathing on a beach naked! He gets an idea They've always said I'm faster than a speeding bullet and I've always wondered what she'd be like with all her powers. So he zooms down and does her in a flash and is gone before anyone can notice. All of a sudden WonderWoman sits up and says, What the was that!?! Then the Invisible Man gets off her and replies, I don't know but it hurt like hell!

**The Flashing Wife.** A guy goes over to his friends house, rings the bell. The wife answers.

Hi, is Tony home?

No, Chris, he went to the store.

Well, do you mind if I wait?

No, come on in.

They sit down and the friend says, You know Sara, you have the most beautifully shaped breasts I've ever seen. I'd give you a hundred bucks if I could just see one.

Sara thinks about this for a second and figures, what the hell, a hundred bucks is a hundred bucks. She opens her robe and shows him one. He thanks her and promptly throws a hundred bucks on the table. They sit there a while longer and Chris says, They are just so beautiful! I've got to see them both. I'll give you another hundred if I could just see them both together.

Sara say what the hell, opens her robe and gives Chris a nice long look. Chris thanks her and throws another hundred bucks on the table and says he can't wait any longer for Tony and leaves. A while later Tony arrives home and his wife says, You know, your weird friend Chris came over. Tony thinks about this for a second and says, Well, did he drop off the 200 bucks he owes me?

### **8.3 Play a game of Crash and Burn**

by Razor Cat

A little idiocy is great for confidence. The game: Crash and Burn. The object of this game is to crash and burn. Hit women with the worst lines, the most outrageous innuendoes, lame pickups, and so forth. Go down in flames repeatedly. Have fun doing this. Make this your goal. Okay, now you've been shot down in the most horrendous of ways. Fun, wasn't it? And you are still alive! And a whole lot more desensitised. Yes, this does work. I had six women laughing for an hour this way at a party. It's based on the Juggling school of management. In brief: they teach you to juggle in order to be a better manager. The first thing that they have you do is drop the balls. You spend five or ten minutes practising this. The lesson is that you can't be afraid of dropping the balls. Screwing up isn't failure, it's just screwing up.

#### **8.4 Things to do for fun**

- Use the buddy system. Walk through a group of girls and have someone watch to see who's checking you out.
- Carry some bubble mix for elevator rides. When you're alone, fill the car with bubbles. Only a zombie would get on without saying anything.
- Wear a sweatshirt emblazoned with a foreign phrase. Somebody is bound to ask you to translate (have something prepared though).

- deleted

Clifford: I have a whole shelf full of others, but these get the best reactions.

Johnny Shack: Think about how a woman catches your attention with the aroma of a seductive perfume. Imagine how it grabs a woman's attention if a man is wearing a cologne? Now women are more alert to smell than men because they have spent many years pampering their bodies with differing lines of cosmetics. So any effort by you on this frontier will not go unnoticed. All you have to do is follow these two guidelines.

NOTE 1: Once you decide to wear after shave your attractiveness rises incredibly. Women pick up the slightest scent of after shave and it grabs their attention. Whenever I wear after shave I will invariably get compliments, whether it be in a bar or a petrol station. Women often even know the name of your after shave, and they love to tell you what it is. This brings us to the next point

NOTE 2: I suggest to buy an after shave that is well known so it increases the possibility of women recognising it. This single attention to detail can start many relationships for you. If a woman was wanting to talk with you it provides a topic that they feel totally at home with, cosmetics. It can even start a conversation from a woman that had no previous interest in you. Most men do not regularly wear after shave, so it separates you from the crowd of hungry competitors out there.

#### **8.5 Miscellaneous suggestions and observations about seduction**

##### **Misc I**

- Women love men just as much as we love women. Women love sex just as much as we do. Women are gonna get it somewhere, may as well be you.
- Women need romance. The way to a woman's panties is through her mind, heart, and soul.
- No matter how hard the shell, they all have a soft centre.
- Get to know everything you can about women. Study this subject.
- You can never build too much rapport. Good rapport is the foundation of the relationship.
- Be playful. Be confident. Be in charge.
- The more you make her laugh, the closer you are to where you want to be. Take every opportunity to make her laugh.
- Never ask her for anything, instead suggestively entice and let her give to you. If there is to be an exception, then simply tell her what will be.
- When she is being difficult, challenge her.
- Never give her anything, instead reward her. If she will not give you anything, give her a reason to, or challenge her to, or dare her to.
- Maintain a high self esteem at all costs. This may mean cutting your losses at times.
- Make yourself more attractive. Work out regularly. Wear better clothes. Watch the guys who get the girls and wear what they wear. It's not that fucking hard to do and it goes a long fucking ways. Women have a saying You are what you wear.
- Get to know poetry. It is the perfect medium for you to lubricate her, but in a romantic and metaphorical way. Best thing: she thinks you are a poetic, deep, and sensual man; not a pervert, even though you are being a total pervert, hehe
- And. Always. Eye contact, Eye contact, Eye contact!



Seduction is largely a matter of not making the same mistakes. Not making mistakes includes:

- Not being supplicating
- Not moving too fast or pushing her
- Not walking past obviously perfect opportunities
- Not avoiding a woman just because you might think that she is not the ideal woman
- Not giving up on her if a voice in your head tries to tell you there is some reason to drop it
- Not giving a shit about rejection.

More mistakes to avoid. Vincent Runza, ASF:

- Timid, unsure behavior in front of girls.
- Offering to 'get her something' - a drink, food, chair, etc. is called supplication - DON'T DO IT!
- Acting like she is more special than you are - she isn't, BTW.
- Asking her a question and not listening to the answer.
- Counting yourself out with a girl before you've even met.
- Assuming she's not the type to take you somewhere right now and fuck your brains out - even the best of us occasionally make that mistake.

Mr Happy, ASF: This is one of the BASICS: Once you demonstrate to a woman that she can manipulate you, she loses all sexual attraction for you and designates you as a pawn.

### Misc III

To have sex with a girl you must.

1. appear confident and in control. CONTROL or ATTRACTION.
2. be entertaining and spontaneous. REWARD.
3. be friendly and charming. REWARD.
4. not have the appearance of being broke. CONTROL or ATTRACTION.
5. wear nice clean clothes and smell ok. ATTRACTION.
6. not appear too eager. ATTRACTION.

CONTROL = Your state when you are not rewarding the girl. REWARD = Milk and cookies.

ATTRACTION = I have something that you're looking for

Details of the above six characteristics:

1. Appearance of confidence and control comes from body language, facial expression and mannerisms Try to make as many decisions as possible on your own, have the look like whatever progress that's happening with the girl is just the way you expected it to go, even appear to check out other girls occasionally Do not look unusually happy just because the girl said something nice. Occasionally NEG HIT, if you see the intensity dropping off somewhat. NEG HIT as punishment and do so jokingly.
2. Spontaneity or Entertainment can be demonstrated with a good sense of humour and quick thinking If you can make humorous responses even to the dull comments that girls make and then anchor all the favourable responses you are doing well. Whenever a girl seems to be laughing sincerely and not for the sake of politeness make sure to anchor that somehow. So as to keep the best times memorable Do not do this constantly though. Do this in response to positive feed back from her conversation or body language or posture. Do not give away too much of this. This is like a reward.
3. To be friendly and charming show the girl glimpses of you being a gentleman do so only when she seems to have done or said something nice to you. She will be able to see that those kind of behaviours that you like to see from her lead her to your soft inner self. Girls like to change bad boys into nice guys. They like to think that they can change your behaviour. Its an ego trip for them and this is also a reward. This is a stronger one than 2.
4. e.g. Open the door for the girl for example if she rubbed your crotch in the night club
5. Don't wear cheap trash. Do not hang with people that do.
6. As above.
7. To not appear too eager, you must not go physical prematurely and must not go to sexual audio prematurely. A girl will often mention sex directly and or or indirectly with speech and or or physical

contact. Safest bet is to initiate the sexual part of the **PU** after such an indication and not before. Stick to the control or reward phase until such indication. Exceptions apply of course but rarely. Almost always you will be aware of the girls readiness to move into sexual directions. For the exceptions just start **KINO** with the neutral bodyzones moving into more sexual and your movement should proceed with regard to the girls feedback.

**ASF:** And do not spend more than 10 minutes with any one girl if you have not been given any signal to get EL PHYSICAL

**Sales techniques applied to seduction.** And vice versa Answer: Jake Thomson, **ASF:**

At one point in my life I worked in sales, and yes, I used the principles discussed in speed seduction to make sales. It works quite nicely as it's simply basic persuasion. This is the process for making ecological sales and or seductions.

0. Get rapport.

1. Qualify your prospect. Are they good enough for your product? IOW, do they have the means and the ability to pay for it? Are they the decision maker? If yes, proceed. Else, eject and find another prospect.

2. Further qualify your prospect. Take the time to find out what their most desired emotional states are. Is your product good for them? Will it help to fill their wants or needs as the prospect perceives them? Also, you may want to learn what their least desired states are. IOW, what emotions will they do almost anything to avoid experiencing? Will your product or service help them avoid those least desired states? If yes to either of these conditions, proceed. Else, eject and find another prospect.

3. Learn your prospect's convince themselves to buy strategy.

4. Capture and lead your prospect's imagination.

5. Help them access those highly valued emotions they have and link those emotional states to owning or having your product or service. And or or help them link their least desired states to NOT owning or having your product or service. Do this in a way that fits the prospects convince themselves to buy strategy.

6. Accelerate or increase your prospect's emotional states until they compel action to buy.

7. Do a take away and make them prove that they can and will avoid buyers remorse.

8. Let them buy your product or service, deliver the goods, and collect your paycheck.

Keep in mind that in sales or seduction you want to strive for a win or win situation, i.e. value given for value received for BOTH sides.

**Mystey's rules, ASF:**

RULE: Enthusiasm is contagious. Act enthused about something that happened to you and so will she.

RULE: Convey your day has been INCREDIBLE and then proceed to explain WHY. Like meeting her is completely secondary. NOTHING can wreck this day!

RULE: Connect with her using I live my life one day at a time attitudes.

RULE: Connect with her using So many people are so judgemental about things. You seem really open and fun.

**Jargon's rules, ASF:**

The attitude:

- - Your time is valuable. Don't waste your time. Use it effectively.
- - Women want and enjoy sex
- - Go play. Get girls into bed. That is IT. That's the goal.
- - Everything is an opportunity.
- - There is no failure. You either learn or you succeed.

Meeting

- - It's up to you to approach. Don't wait longer than 3 seconds.
- - Approach often.
- - Learn how to hold a conversation. Engage your listeners. Listen well when others speak.
- - Avoid typical pick-up spots. Women are on guard.
- - Be conversational and friendly in your approach. You don't want her to put up her defenses.
- - Any place is a good place.
- - Get her away from others, even if briefly
- - Don't be afraid to say adios at any point.

General Conversation

- - Learn the art of conversation
- - Complement her choices and skills, not her. (Clothes, hair style, projects, etc.)
- - Speak of your hopes and ambitions. Show that you are going somewhere in your life.
- - Invoke memories in her that bring up positive, in-love, open emotions.
- - Catch her imagination
- - Use **kino**, communication by touch.
- - Listen to her. Ask her question.
- - Echo her values.

## Closing

- - Don't linger too long. **AFC**'s linger. Your time is valuable.
- - Challenge her for her number, don't ask. Lead. Do not supplication. It will be her idea to give you her number if you do everything right.
- - Listen to her. She will give you opportunities. It's up to you to spot and identify those opportunities. That's not always easy.

Ned Ragduos, **ASF**: You gain points by changing her state of mind, making her feel curious, happy, mesmerized by you, feeling that you understand her better than anyone else in the world, feeling that she's known you forever, feeling like she can remember already having gone out with you and had a great time, and looking back on this moment in time as having been the start of it all. It's just language, you can be as playful as you want.

If she tells you that she thinks you are trying to pick her up, you make no apologies, and agree with her, saying that you do want to fuck her but you'd rather prefer to get to know her first.

DrLove, Mindlist: For most women, they have experienced pain in a relationship before and they often want some sort of re-assurance that they won't have to re-experience this. This is a little difficult and every situation requires a different approach. Here are a few guiding principles that come to mind:

1. Have in your own mind the belief that what you have to offer her is truly beneficial to both of you. You mustn't have any hidden reservations or doubts about the benevolence of your intentions.
2. BE HONEST! I know this runs contrary to what some successful seducers may tell you but long term it does result in the best outcome for all concerned. Even if you are seeing other women, she'll appreciate you more if you're open and upfront about it. Honesty will show in your congruency.
3. Be original and creative. Never let her know what to expect from you. This will set you apart from all the jerks and **AFCs** she's met before. It will also keep her on her toes. One of our mindlist sisters gave the brilliant metaphor of peeling away layers of an onion (in discovering what a man is like) - use her advice!
4. Be willing to show your true emotions. When you feel angry, say so! This will re-inforce her trust in you.
5. Do whatever you can to make her feel good. I know this sounds obvious, but the manner in which you do it is important: don't supplicate and don't try to buy your way into her pants, surprise her with your words, with poetry, with visualisation exercises.
6. Make sure her neuro-associations with you are positive. This means DO NOT ACT AS HER COUNSELLOR, THERAPIST OR BUDDY! Remember the rule: When you discuss a woman's problem with her, you become her problem.

Johnny Shack: What are your greatest attributes? You need to make them SHINE like diamonds. Your weakpoints will need to be brought to a reasonable standard so they won't be an achilles' heel. If you own a great car don't be afraid to show it. Just don't make it obvious. If your car is a bomb then make sure you don't present it as one. If you have great legs then show them. If you don't there is no need to be wearing shorts in the middle of winter even if the sun is out. Do the best with what you have!

## 8.6 The effectiveness of persistence with a smile

by NightLight9

Anyway as it gets closer to closing time I see a girl (8) who I thought was cute but had been with another guy early in the evening (who she obviously knew). She was now by her herself at a bench on the wall and I was about 20 ft away with 3 friends at a table. I make eyecontact and waved her to come over (In my experience this never works except with girls with no self respect, so it's sort of test on my part) She gives me a look that says, Yeah right. I get up and walk over to here (about 3 seconds since the initial eye contact. I sit down at chair as close as I can without being rude right in front of her (between two tables so I'm a little off to the side). She has the total bitch shield up, but she isn't looking away. I say So what brings you to bar X (but the key is I have an ear to ear grin). She says her friend got married. I keep asking her really bland questions about what she's doing, but with this huge smile (almost a caricature). After about 5 of these

questions, I say what do you do? But then before she can say, I say let me guess (looking quizical for a few seconds). I say your a lion tamer aren't you? She immediately goes for it (every girl I've ever used this on has loved it and it's yours here royalty free (smile) She still hasn't smiled during this whole time. I run with it. Do you stick your head all the way in the lions mouth? That must be pretty risky. Still no smile at all but she is going allong with it. Then it happens. I feel here ankle brush against my leg. It's all over, smile or not. I put my hand on her knee. She smiles a few minutes later. We keep talking but with every sentence I move a little closer. Finally we are about 6 inches apart and I ask her question, and as son she can answer I kiss her lightly. Then I ask another, longer kiss. Then I kiss here before she can answer a long real kiss. We take a break and her male friend comes back. I start talking to him immediately. Very friendly. After about 5 minutes of conversationtion, she tells him she wants to leave with me. So we go for a walk

The moral of the story is: As mystery always says, the only way to defeat the **bitch shield** is with a smile (and lots of eye contact).

### **8.7 Svengali's street pick-up**

A classic street pick-up by Svengali using humour, romance, sex-talk and **kino** with confidence.

Svengali, **ASF**:

Her: Do you mind if I smoke?

And I said: Why should you be any different from all the other women I have sex with?

Met her at the bakery counter.

I said she had wonderful cup cakes.

She gave an evil wonderful smile.

Asked her if she liked ice cream.

Naturally she says yes.

I said On what part of your body do you like it best?

She laughs.

I say: Am I funny enough to share a cup of coffee with during your lunch break? (Pause, hesitation).

If you feel threatened being with such an old guy, you can bring your bear claws (I point to them in the counter).

She laughs.

Yeah, a cup of coffee will be fine.

Where do you usually have lunch and when do you usually have it?

(If I hear another McDonald's, I think I'll go nuts!)

I knew she was mine after that.

Humor, romance, humor, romance, sex talk, romance, humor, **kino**, sex talk, humor, sex talk, **kino**, **kino**, **kino**, **kino**

### **8.8 Svengali's friend's street pick-up**

Another short yet entertaining field report by Svengali, this time the action is brought home by his friend Svengali, **ASF**:

Svengali's friend to a girl: I love the way you spread your legs when you sit, only everything would look so much better to me if you were wearing a short dress and no panties (he automatically and naturally laughs saying such silly things)

FYI, the context of all this is that women, naturally, spread their legs open when they're wearing jeans or slacks.

BTW, my friend and I both did her and it came out of this dialogue:

Her: (with a smile on her face How dare you. Don't you think that's a little indignant?

Friend: (with a smile on his face You're getting mad at me because I find you attractive enough to want to have sex with you?! Look around here (coffee shop). How many women do you see?

Her: About twelve.

My friend: See that woman over there (he points)? Her breasts are far better then yours. That woman over there has a much better face then yours; and that woman over there dresses better then every woman in this place, and that woman over there has you beat in the legs department. But I saw something you have that's better then every woman in here, and you should be flattered that I noticed it. But by covering it up, you're depriving everyone of all your glory. What do you think Svengali?

Svengali with a big amazed smile: I think you're right.

Needless to say, she was so blown away by what my friend said, that she did quite know how to respond.

Long and short of it, we were both doing her in about an hour and half from the time we first met her. And come to think of it, we spent more time doing her then we spent getting to know her

(But then again, doing her is also one way of getting to know her)

## 8.9 The original Mr Smooth posts

By Maniac High, ASF:

Tonight, something very interesting happened, I ran into a guy using a new **sarging** approach, which I must say is different, but was very effective. The result, lots of **HBs**! Shitloads of kissing (within 2 minutes of meeting the chicks!)! Phone Numbers, and babes from heaven. I am going to describe what this guy (and I with him as I picked it up from in during the night) was doing, and then would be very interested to get your opinions on how or why this was even working. I was shocked!

Tonight, I went with Taro to an area in Tokyo called Roppongi, a big nightclub and going out area (ever been to a place, where there are 15 story buildings, and each floor is a different club? Well that is Roppongi, apparently its got the biggest density of night life (1 square mile by 10 floor buildings all over) any where in the world.

We arrived at midnight, and went to a dance bar. It was a rather uneventful evening until about 2am, trying to make eye contact, talking a bit to ladies, not much luck. loud music and very crowded place.

Then all of the sudden, while I was near the dance floor, I got grabbed by a guy, to dance with this girl (he was behind her, I was in front), in that sandwich style. The guy I didn't know, but as I would find out later during the evening, he is one of the best and smoothest **PUA's** I have ever seen operate, and he had a very unusual style, which was extremely effective. Smooth is 26, average looking Japanese guy, wearing casual clothes, basically nothing that a girl would like on just looks alone. His secret, was what he said (and didn't say), and his very careful use of non verbal communications to slide girls down the slippery slope of first rejecting us, and then liking us. We were able to pick up **HB** chicks, get them to like us, and kissing us within 5 minutes flat.

He came alone to bars, not with a **wingman**, and rather than go up to a girl, and introduce himself, like most guys do, but rather, gain rapport through introducing me (and not himself) to the girls. I would do likewise (you ever hear the story about the two russian admirals who started out as soldiers, and always complimented the other in their absense to superiors till they both got to be admirals. well this is what he was doing, with anchors, touching, visualization, jealousy.etc.);

He would go up to a group of girls (and he wouldn't wait for eye contact or anything, he'd just go up), and introduce me (or which ever guy he could find around him), to the **target** chicks, lightly put his arms around both chicks (not in a intimidating way, but a friendly way and say how such a great guy I was to the girls. He would basically get rapport with the girls saying how great I was (he didn't even know me actually), and not paying attention to any particular girl. He'd say how we should all be friends and get to know each other more, because (he said), I really like Japanese girls, and I thought they were so cute (and we only hit on 9s and 10s, so they were all cute). I was just watching this, and didn't say much myself, but over the evening with different chicks, I started to do the same thing with the girls regarding him (how he is so great guy, we've known each other a lot. as a rapport mechanism). He was very casual, cool, and ironically, made poor eye contact with everyone, but talked authoritatively as well as relaxed. He'd never argue with a girl, but just usually repeat something about how nice it was to be friends, or how great I was, or how it would be fun to go eat or something, each time we got resistance.

He'd then describe states to the girls, but using me in the context, ie. Hed say that I like her because her hair was so smooth and gentle.etc.etc, while he would touch her hair. He was also anchoring without knowing it, because everytime he'd say something to her about how I was a great guy, or how I thought she was cute (I don't speak much Japanese, so he could get away with this), he would tap her gently on the shoulder, or put his arm around her waist and bring her closer to me. Then he'd say more how I thought she was nice, and I was a great guy, and repeat again how we should get to know each other, he'd gently take both our heads, and push them together for a kiss, in a joking way. The girl would usually refuse, and then he'd say how I really liked her, and gesture the cheek, and she'd kiss me there (or I'd kiss her there), then he'd get the other to reciprocate the kiss. After that, he talked about how that was really nice, and how it was good we were getting on so well, and how it would be good to get a real kiss. At the same time, he is already gently getting closer to the girl that HE wanted, his arm around her waist, while doing the whole kiss routine with me and the other girl. He is laughing, and so is the other chick(s). Then my chick and we would kiss (he would gently coax both our heads together), and at the same time, I have already got my arm around my chick now. We are being light and funny, being very overt about what we could get the girls to do, and doing a high 5 (me and Smooth) each time we made progress with a chick (kiss, cheek, arms.etc). Then we'd talk a little more to the chicks (nothing heavy topic, no overt **NLP**, no patterns, just touching lightly, but as the 20 minutes goes on, holding longer and longer to hands, neck.etc.etc). He now was doing the same thing with his chick. A couple minutes later he'd say again how we were getting on so well, and how the girl had made such a good choice to choose me because I was such a good guy, and that he wanted to see us (me and my chick) kiss again, since we were such a nice couple and relating so well. By that time, I had been holding her hand (this started when he told the girl I was really liking her because she was so nice and he took her hand and put it on mine). Then he took the hand of his chick, who was laughing and giggling through this. After we all got through our kisses with our respective chicks, we'd say how they are so fun and nice and we are so



happy we met them and got to know them, and we'd say we'd love to get a chance to talk more, and get to know each other better. They'd ask how we could do that and I'd ask them (all of them), their phone numbers. I'd collect them, and kiss my girl again a nice long kiss, and then say we have to go, and we moved on to the next chicks in the bar (and we didn't take long, maybe 5-10 seconds), and jump in front of the next pair or threesome of chicks and do the entire routine over.

So what did we get for the night. Well, I kissed more chicks that I can remember, got a shitload of numbers (15 or so?) of most of the HBs in the place, lots of touching, and they were all crazy about us at the end of the routine, which was around 20 minutes or so. Over the evening, as I learned his style, I would reciprocate, and we got better results even.

This was working anywhere, we got a bunch of girls in bars, and two sets on the street near the clubs that we were able to start making out with right on the street within about 2 minutes of meeting them! His opener for the kiss with one pair was really good. We walked right up to two HBs and he did his my friend is a great guy routine and really likes you, like before, and then got her to agree that I was a nice guy too. Then he said that's great, so lets jan-ken (play rock scissors paper), and the loser (of me and the chick) has to kiss (ie. No matter who wins the chick and I end up kissing in reality), we played, she lost, and I gave her a short kiss on the lips right in the street 60 seconds after meeting her. Then he continued the above routine, in the prev. paragraph, and we ended up kissing more. I said that now we (me and my chick) kissed, so now I wanted to see him and his chick kiss. they did. Again, the high fives each time we got a chick to do something, right in front of them. it was like a game show our attitudes with the chicks, and they got into it too. BTW, the chick I kissed in 60 seconds was only 19, I am 31, he's 26 and his chick was 19 too. They were crazy about us too after about 10 minutes of this, we got their numbers, and then walked up the street 20 feet and did the same routine all over again with the next two HBs.

Guys, I don't know why, but this works. If you get a good partner, you can really hit on a chick without hitting on her, if you are doing it for the other guy. because actually you arent really hitting on her! (it helps if the other guy is reciprocating. or even if he's not, because you can do the moves on your chick, while describing how its nice for the other chick and the other guy to do the same thing, right in front of your own target). Like I said, he was just grabbing guys in the bar and introducing them to chicks when there were groups. the other guys though didnt speak much japanese, so didnt get very far, but we did great and will go next week and get more chicks, once I finish with all the numbers I got.

We did well, everyone was a 9 or 10, one chick wearing very sexy black hot pants and half top, and she was all over me like glue by the end. Several others, I cant remember. I was necking with one for 5 minutes. We got all their numbers and they were pleading for us to call them by the end each time. Shitloads of women. I'd never had a night like this before. this guy is GOOD!

Oh, that was the other thing, often, when we'd first introduce to a chick, they'd try to blow us out. But Smooth would never give up on chicks as long as there was interaction (even if it was negative) of any kind, for a minimum of 5 minutes. He'd repeat how great I was, and how much I liked them, and loved Japanese women. it worked because it is hard for the chick to blow him (me) out, since I wasn't doing anything. he was talking about me. in over 50% of the cases, after a bit of that, and how we should be friends, their barriers would go down, and we could start the normal routine, and get the french kisses and phone numbers and get them crazy about us, and move on. Again, very much 'game show host' attitude as he was moving me and the chick along, while doing the same thing to his chick. As well, he would talk with whoever in the bar, and make the chick wait a couple minutes (we were already holding their hands, so they had to wait. ie. were not supplicating. we made them wait, and get used to waiting for us to finish). We did this in the street, he saw a street band, he stopped and started talking tot he musician, and just made the chicks wait (I am suprised they didnt leave. but they didnt) as they were a bit ahead of us on the street by then).

Things he didn't do. didn't ask their names (until just before the phone close, but after the kiss), didnt talk about hobbies, or any of that other shit. just, I am great, their cute, we are wonderful, you should kiss, here take his hand, he is my best friend. etc. etc. very surface level. He was never serious, and never got into questions about jobs or whatever either, just he stuck to the point, were all here, lets have fun and and see what we can do. When a girl gave resistance, he never argued, but grab her hand, put it on mine, and say how we are having fun, ask her if she likes me (shed say I am okay), then go on to how I like her. blah blah. Aggressive somehow, but not really since he is not pushing HIMSELF on her, he is pushing me, and then taking his own chick along. He paid very little attention to his chick verbally, but would duplicate the physical stuff with the hands, et. al. that he was getting me to do with my chick. He would put his arms around all the chicks in the group with me, while we danced with them. again, game show host attitude all the way, high fives often when one of us would get a small 'win' with a chick. etc. etc. He'd say to come met us again next week (even though we got their numbers), and we'll be out here. blah blah. When girls werwe on the street going someplace, or one chick in the group wanted to drag the others away, he'd ask where they were going, (they'd say, home. another club, drinking. etc), he'd say that's good lets go, and force us upon them. For about a couple minutes they were uncomfortable, but as he talked about how great I was, and happy we could spend time with them, and it was so much fun, their attitude would change. again, like when we'd first meet them kind of problem he'd resolve it the same way they'd start smiling, and we'd end up having lots of fun. the

kissing.phon nums.touching.all over again. We had about a 75% hit rate (ie. We could french kiss and get numbers of about 75% of the chicks we hit on), using this method.

So what do you think guys? His approach worked because you can be very overt when you are helping out your friend (and of course the friend is reciprocating). We were with chicks all the time and both of us got much farther than we would have under any traditional approach. We decided to go to a chick shopping district and just try it on the street. That will be another report.

One more thing.I have seen this approach in one other place, and I think this is where he learned it. In Japan, there is a kind of erotic video, where two or three guys will just go on a street by a train station, and hit on girls exactly like he did (same phrases, actions.words), and try and get them to sleep with him to make the video. It is all real and unstaged. Ironically, quite a few girls will actually go for it. He was doing exactly this, like the approach the guys used in the videos to convince the girls (they are pretty, my buddy thinks you are sexy.blah blah.kiss game.blah). They are called 'street Nanpa' videos (nanpa = skirt chasing, or sarging), and are all over japan. They are very good instruction because they show all the pickups attempts successes and failures, of the chicks till they get the one that they sleep with. probably someplace on the net has got them too.they are all over Japan anyways.

#### **Mr Smooth no 2**

Answer:

As son as we got in, we started hitting within 10 secs (one thing about Mr. Smooth I like, is that he is not a wall flower, he will not spend more than 10 secs w or o talking to a chickthis is real important guys. hit.hit.hit). I hate wallflowers because they discourage me from hit hit hitting as they just stand around 'waiting for the perfect time'.fuck that. Answer:

Ok, I was the first one to go in, we are in the Pizza line, we meet at 9pm, and in the pizza place in a couple minutes, and I hit the chick in front of me in line, an 8. I introduce Smooth to her, following the routine we decided for the night. We got cold icy stares, but I kept on interacting though as long as she would, like I saw smooth do last time. No luck, she started to ignore us and ran away. Answer:

Right after that (20 seconds?) , I then tell smooth that I like the two chicks in the corner other side of the restaurant. I start looking over there, and I get eye contact with Black Dress HB, and her '7' friend. I gesture to come her, but she is reluctant, and keeps pointing to her friend. I gesture her do bring her friend over too. While they talk, Smooth gets 2 chairs ready at our table. They come over and we start talking. Regular smooth routine, we get to kisses on the cheek in about 2 minutes. Not bad. Answer:

Then Smooth tries his new approach, he wanted to know if within a couple minutes we could get chicks over to my house for a private party with all 5 of us. He makes the pitch, and then repeats it several times over the talk, they laugh and giggle. We then talk about playing a game popular in Japan called 'oosama' (the king). It is kind of a drinking simon says game, you pick a number (or jan-ken rock scissors paper), and the winner gets to make two other players do something (anything). Apparently it is quite popular here, and after a bit of drinking, can get quite raunchy. I fake like I don't know what is oosama, and try to get the girls to explain it to me. Then I ask what is the most weird thing you did in oosama before (hoping to get something physical, which I can start to anchor on). I didn't get much results. We will use oosama in future routines, as it worked well, and you can get to 'physical' things in the discussion right away, which is good. Answer:

Lessons - going for getting a chick directly over w or o the setup first doesn't work (no biggie there, but we did want to try), and talking about 'oosama' is a good way to lead to other discussion along intimate or sexual lines. And getting physical withchicks on the dance floor works well and is easy if you do it in fours or fives, before pairing offcool!

#### **8.10 David Shade's real-life seduction**

My fellow asf ng buddies. You have not heard from me in over 2 months. I have been very busy with my new found confidence to approach any woman anywhere with openers that actually work, since finishing Ross' basic home study course.

I have also been spending most of my online time reading the SS list. There are some fantastic success stories there, especially from guys like Bishop. I have learned almost as much from the SS list as from the course.

Here is my report for last week. As you will see, it is a lot different from my previous reports. This is going to sound a lot like a Bishop post, but that is because he is my role model and I thought about what he would do. Don't ask me for the patterns used. They are from the course and various posts in the SS list.

So I'm walking through the ladies dresses section in a fancy clothing store at the mall and happen to see an attractive sales girl walking towards me. She is about an 8, late 20s, 5'7, tight slender build, nice eyes, and reeeeel purdy lips. She has cropped short black hair and wire rim glasses. The artsy creative type. I look straight into her eyes. She looks. We continue looking at each other as we approach. Just before she passes she smiles and I smile back. I now know she has a good attitude. I walk a few more steps and turn around and walk to where she is putting clothes on a rack. I approach and use Ross' AB opener. She blushes bright pink and says Oh thank you. I anchor that with my left hand on the top of her right wrist and say I did not

mean to make you blush. Then I extend my hand and say My name's David. She shakes it and says My name's Lisa. I go for the number in the challenging fashion that Ross instructs us to do in the course. She says OK, let me get my card and give you my number here at work! She starts to walk and I say You are very busy here at work, is there a way I might reach you when you are not so busy? She says I don't want to do that. You can always call me here, or, you can give me your number. I say I am never home and I seem to always miss calls. Do you have access to email? She says No, but I can call you and leave a message and you can call me back! I use Bishop's famous challenge line here. She looks at me disappointed and says No, please don't do that! What do you do? I say I'm an engineer at . She says Oh I used to work there. But I am a very creative type. I left there to come here and to start my own jewelry making business. They could not appreciate me there. I say I am only analytical at work, after work I relax and enjoy being a human being. She says Oh I know what you mean. I say In fact, I too enjoy being creative. She says I know, I could see it in your eyes. I say Is that so? She says Yes, and you have very intense eyes. I look very intensely at her and say I hope you are not intimidated by very intense eyes and then smile. She says Oh No, not at all. In fact, I like them. What is your creative medium? I say I like to write poetry. She says Oh really, I love poetry. I say Well, I would love to read some of my poetry to you sometime. She says I would love that. Then I use Major Mark's challenge line and Bishop's famous poetry invitation. She smiles really big and then looks disappointed and says Oh I'm sorry, I can't tonight, I have plans, but let me give you my card and I will take your number, wait here. I take a seat next to the piano and chat up a nice lady who is sitting next to me waiting for someone. Lisa returns and I stand to meet her. She says Here is my card. What is your phone number? I tell her as she writes it on another card. She says Can I call you? I say Yes, that would be nice. She shakes my hand again and I leave.

Shortly after I arrive home the phone rings. I can tell from the caller ID that it is her. We start out with small talk. Then she gets into a long discussion about how she was so unhappy at the previous company. I let it go only long enough to get some of her trance words (feel, creative, deep, understand) and values and then steered it in the direction of her jewelry creations. She delights in telling me all about the shows her jewelry has been in and how she has orders that she has to fill tonight. I then steer it in the direction of the poetry. When I get the chance, I say Would you like to hear one I have written? She says Yes, but I warn you, I have not eaten dinner yet and I don't want to pass out on you if it is a really good poem. I say OK, just this one poem. Then I recite Bro Nick Fortune's Two Eyes. She says Wow, that was beautiful. I say You are so sweet, I am so glad you liked it. She says I did, I am only telling the truth. Then the discussion starts going in the wrong direction and I pull it back. I say, not all of my poems have to rhyme, some of them are more free form. Would you like to hear one more? She delightfully agrees and I recite Bishop's The Sweetest Sound. There is a pause, and she says Oh my God. I say I am so glad you liked it. Then I say I love how you can really feel my poetry. She says Yes, I really feel it. Like it touches me so deeply. You write about feelings. How do you know so much about feelings? I say I am a student of the human mind. As electrical engineers, we looked to the human brain as an alternative computing architecture. While reading neurologist's papers, they quoted papers and studies done by psychologists. I became fascinated by the subject. Here is one experiment they talked about. Would you like to try it? She is game, so I did the Blammo pattern. She had diagonal interference patterns so I helped her to adjust the control knob that tunes in a station to reduce interference. I say But such a visual experiment just shows how you and I are kinesthetic people, we are feeling people, we are not visual like most other people. She says Yes. (pause) I knew we were a lot alike. I say Yes, we communicate in a different way, we FEEL. She says Yes, so many people cannot understand that. They are intimidated by it because they do not understand it. But you understand it. Who are you? I feel as if I have known you for so long! I say I know, I feel that as well. I understand how you feel. She says Do you talk like this to all the girls? I say I only say what I feel. She says Oh, that is good! Then I go into the IC pattern and she interrupts me many times to clarify and agree. She says I want to give you a big hug right now. I say Oh Lisa, I can feel that hug. Then I say Talking about feelings, here is a poem about just that thing. I recite Rose in Your Heart from Mindlist. There is a very very long pause. Finally she says I am speechless. I say Good, I want you to be. I want you to feel understanding so deeply that not even words can describe it. She says I. (pause) feel so closely to you David. Do you do this with all the girls? I say How can I Lisa? This is so rare what we have. We are both feeling people and we have communicated on such a deep level with our feelings. (All true.) She says Yes. so true. (pause) this is scary. Are you scared? I say Yes Lisa, it is scary. I feel scared and excited at the same time. I then go into the Discovery Channel pattern. She says I know something else that is like that. I laugh and then there is a long pause. She says I don't know what to do?

I can hear Bishy telling me that she is asking me to help her to agree to meet. I do not have an anchor to fire off, but I do have words, so I say I feel so closely to you. She says You have made me feel so vulnerable to you. She says You have made me feel so open to you, so exposed. I say Yes, that is it exactly. I need to see you. She says When can we get together? I say Monday night would be good. She says she has something that night, but Tuesday is good. I say I cannot meet Tuesday or Thursday but Wednesday is good. She cannot meet Wednesday but this next weekend is good. I tell her I cannot meet on the weekend. Stale mate. I feel that we have enough rapport that I can report to her that I am divorced and

have two sons who I see every Tuesday and Thursday evening and every other weekend. She takes it well. I tell her about the boys and how they enjoy going on dates with me, and they talk the whole time to my date and I never get a word in edgewise. She likes it. She tells me about her two cats who are like her daughters. I say It is so special to have that, knowing that your cats love you unconditionally. She says Oh yes, they love me. Never did we get to the age question. She is probably 16 years younger than me.

I say It is too bad it will be at least a week before we can get together. She says David, you have touched me on a different plane. It is as if you have touched me without even touching me. I say Lisa, that is the nicest compliment anyone has given me in a very long time. She says What do you want to do? I know what she is asking me to do. I say I want to be with you. She says Those things you have to do tonight, do you have to do them? I say I can put them off. She says I would like to meet you tonight. I say I would like to meet you tonight. She says I would like to meet with you privately, but I think it is best if we meet in a public place. I say Oh I agree. As much as I would love to be alone with you, we need to meet where I can get to know who you really are, what your values are, who the real Lisa is. She is very happy with that. I say OK, let's agree on a restaurant where you can finally have dinner. She says I'm not hungry anymore. I laugh and say Neither am I. She laughs. We agree on a coffee shop near her house and agree to meet there in 45 minutes. I tell her Now Lisa, when you see me, I want you to give me that big hug you promised me. She says Oh I will!

I arrive on time. She is not there yet. I find that it is full. None of the couches are available. There are a number of very attractive young ladies that I would love to approach, but I pass the time by chatting with the manager. The temperature in the late evening has dropped and it is very cool outside, but it is warm in the coffee shop.

She arrives with a jacket and no glasses. She smiles and blushes. I put out my arms like I am expecting that big hug. She opens her arms wide and gives me the most delicious hug. I slide my hands under her jacket. I love how her slender firm body feels in my arms. Wow. Knowing that she is a kinesthetic person I whisper into her ear You feel even better than you look. She holds me even tighter. This goes on for about a minute. I notice that a couch becomes available so I let go and take her hand and lead her to our couch.

We take a seat. She takes off her jacket. We are both smiling big and I sense that she is feeling a bit awkward. I hold her hand in mine and say We will just relax here and allow ourselves to get used to being together again and allow ourselves to feel totally comfortable with each other. She likes it and says It is getting warm in here. We laugh. I start with small talk about all we have been through so as to allow her to relive our relationship so far, backwards in time, which makes her feel very comfortable. Then the waitress comes and she orders some fancy French type of ice tea and I order a plain ice tea. Answer:

When the drinks arrive I run Bishy's Ice Tea pattern. I am purposefully blatant with the embedded commands. She smiles and looks at me as if she knows what I am up to. We both laugh. More small talk while we are massaging each other's hands. She is a little nervous and holding my hands is her security blanket. She apologetically says I have big hands for a woman. (I thought they were very feminine actually.) I say Well you know what that would mean if you were a man? She laughs and says Oh but that is not always true. I say Might not, but its sheer size is not what is important, but the way each other makes the other feel while making love. She says Oh so true.

She holds her hands just a fraction of an inch from either side of mine and says Did you know that you can feel the energy between two people? I say I can feel that. LisAnswer:

I compliment her on her beautiful eyes. She says Your eyes are very playful. You have a playfulness about you. I say I think that is what it is all about. Why do it if it cannot be fun. It should be playful.

She says Even when I first looked into your eyes, I felt as if I had always known you. I used this to go into the IC pattern again, but this time to plant that famous anchor on the solar plexus. She accepted it and actually liked it.

She asks me where I get the inspiration to write such beautiful poetry. I say When I am alone, I think about how it would feel to not be alone, what it would be like, how it would feel, what we would do. Then I ask her Do you know how it feels to be alone? She replies Oh yes. I say Do you feel alone now? She says Oh no. I say This feeling, that you are feeling now, (I fire off top of wrist anchor) how would you describe it? How would you describe the opposite of alone? She looks at me for a while and says Embraced. I say That is the perfect word for it, embraced. Then I say to her Now, we are together, as if we have always meant to have met, and that reminds me of a story I once heard. A story about soul friends. She says Friends? You mean soul mates? She seemed kind of disappointed. I know that I will later have to manage her relationship expectations. I say Soul friends, like we have always known each other. Then I go into the Soul Friends pattern. I anchor her childhood time with me with a touch on the inside of her arm just above the wrist. Then the present a little higher than that, and the future a little higher than that. Then I say And now you can feel that we have always been together as I slide my finger from her wrist up, and even higher as I say And it just keeps feeling better and better. She closes her eyes for a moment and then looks at me and says I am in a trance.

I just let her look into my eyes for a while. Then I look at her lips and she looks at my lips. Then I say You know that you can feel a first kiss even before it happens? I go into the first kiss pattern. She licks her lips. I

then say and talking about anticipation, have you ever thought of the difference between anticipation and compulsion? She disclosed that she once had a compulsion for Godiva white chocolate clams. They are sweet, smooth, and silky. This was the perfect intro to the BJ pattern. She loved that!

Then I said I brought with me a poem that I wanted to read to you. She looked wide eyed at me and said Oh no! as if Are you going to make me even hotter? I take out of my pocket three pages that I printed out before driving to the coffee shop. I then look at her and her head is rested on the back of the couch in preparation for being read to. I then recite Bishop's Lover's Dance. She sighs and says I saw all the visuals. I felt as if we were really there. Like two lovers sharing that gift that nature has given us to share together. David, you make me feel so deeply. I wish that there were a way that I could make you feel so deeply. hmmm. Then I say Speaking about gifts, I have written about just such a gift. I would like to read it to you now. She looks at the ceiling and then rolls her head towards me and says Yes. I recite Bishop's Warm and fuzzy. When I am done she looks straight ahead and she begins to cry. She says I am crying. David, you have made me feel so deeply. Sometimes I feel so deeply that it hurts. I sense that this will be a problem later. I should have addressed it right then. I hold her closely. We look deeply into each other's eyes.

I know at this time I must manage her relationship expectations. I say Lisa, as you know, we are both very busy people. We had a hard time finding this evening to be together. It will be at least a week before we see each other again. My schedule has always served to raise havoc with a relationship. She says How can you do that? How can you do a take away like that? I say Lisa, too many times in my past, my schedule has only served to ruin a good thing. I want to be totally honest with you. She said Well, I know that in some of my previous relationships, I have gotten too involved with someone at the expense of the other things in my life that I cherish, and I have ended up mad at myself for doing that. I am a busy person. Yes, I do understand. I said Lisa, before, I have gone into relationships and not been totally honest before it goes too far, maybe in order that we will have sex, I don't know. But I am too mature now to mess with anybody's feelings. Feelings are just too precious. She says Yes, David, that is so true. I do thank you for being honest with me. I guess I don't really want someone to be with me all the time, I just want someone who I can share with, who I can call, someone who really cares about me. I say I want nothing more than for us to be totally honest with each other.

The waitress comes by and says it is last call. We decline. Perfect timing. I say It is late and we must go home. I will drive you to your car. When we get to my car, I have a poem in my car that I want to read to you. She delightfully says OK! phew, good. I thought I might have lost her there.

We hold hands as we walk to my car. Her stride is as long as mine and we are walking in step. She wants to do the Monkey's walk where they walk in front of each other's foot. We sing the theme song from the Monkey's.

I unlock the passenger door and hold it as she gets in. I get in the driver's side and find that she is sitting with her legs under her, while facing me. Ross tells us in the BHSC that this is a very good sign. She is cold so I warm up the car. I tell her I have even written poetry for lady friends of mine to read to their boyfriends. Here are two poems that I have written. Remember, these are from a woman's point of view. She is wide eyed and ready. I recite the two poems. She stares at me and says David, how have you described exactly how I feel? I say Because it is how I feel. It is how I want you to feel. She says I want to take you home with me, but it's too soon. I say I completely understand and I respect your decision. Even though we feel as if we have known each other our whole lives, we mustn't move too fast. We don't want to think about how incredible it would be. She says You're not helping any! I laugh and say I will drive you to your car now. We navigate to her car in a nearby well lit parking lot frequented by cops, so I do not want anything to happen in the car. We sit in my car.

She says that it is getting hot now. I turn down the heat and she takes off her coat. She rests her head sideways on the head rest and looks at me. I look at her lips and lick my lips. She leans forward and goes into the actual slow sensual real life enactment of the first kiss. I play my part well. It is awesome. It gets more heated and passionate. Next thing we are licking each other's tonsils. Then I lick her lips as if they were her other lips. This sends her into orbit. Then she complains that she is hot. I turn on the damn air conditioning. She complains again and says that she wants to remove her clothing. Then she says No, how does this seat go back? I recline her seat and she pulls me onto her. Then she says David, I have been hurt so many times. Oh shit, here it comes. I should have addressed this before. She talks about the men in her life who dated her and dumped her and then came back just wanting sex again. I say That type of behaviour makes me angry because just because I am a man, I am included in such a group. That is just the kind of thing I was talking about before. It is only human to be honest with somebody and to really care about someone and I slide my finger up the inside of her arm to fire off the soul friends anchor and say as you can feel that about me. She says I know, it isn't fair, it is not you.

Then she instructs me to recline my seat. She climbs on top of me and more cuddling and kissing occurs. She says breathlessly No don't but continues nonetheless. hmmm She says I want you David. I want to take you home with me. But. I am on my menstrual cycle now. I say Are you self conscious about that? She says Well, yes, in the early part of a relationship I am. I say Lisa, I love everything about you that defines you as feminine, everything. I am very accepting of it all. She says You are so wonderful David. I wish I could do



this. I point at her solar plexus and say I only want you to do what you feel inside here. She slides her head down my stomach and onto my lap. She reaches for my zipper. All I can think about is the flashlight of a cop. I say Lisa, I want this, but I want this in the privacy of your bedroom, where I can feel your body against mine. Where I can feel all of your skin. She rests for a few seconds and then raises up and lies back on her reclined seat and pulls me onto her. She starts massaging her breasts and says David, look at what you do to me, you make me fondle myself. I say That is very exciting for me. (very true) I go for broke and I say Lisa, what do you want me to do. Do you want to me just tell you 'Lisa, take me home with you now'? She softly says no. I do not partake in anymore playtime unless she wants to play at home. We rest in each other's arms. I am not going to push it any further. I do not want to loose any respect she already has for me now and I do not want to mess with her feelings. She says I am not going to get any sleep tonight. I am done jumping hurtles so I say It is late. We better go home. We kiss softly and we both know the night is over. We set our seats up straight and we fix our clothing. I get out and go to her door and open her door. A cop drives by very slowly watching us like a hawk. I say to her The cops are out patrolling lover's lane. She laughs. She puts her coat in her car and turns to me. She says I have a feeling I will be thinking about you a lot. I say And I will of you. We embrace and kiss one last time.

Lisa and I talk on the phone each day over the next 3 days. She mentions in one conversation that she had an operation for endometriosis. She mentions that during her period it causes intercourse to be very uncomfortable. THAT'S WHY! It is a good thing I did not try to push anything. I read to her Bishop's Rain of Desire. She absolutely loves it and asks for a copy of it. I tell her I will bring it to her when I see her again.

Our busy schedules keep us apart. But late Thursday night we make some time and she gives me directions to her place so I can pick her up to take her out for a cup of coffee. I print off Bishop's Rain of Desire and head out. It is a very warm evening this time. When I arrive she opens the door and opens her arms for a big hug. I step inside and close the door behind me. She hugs me very closely. We say nothing. This hug goes on for almost 5 minutes. I finally whisper into her ear You feel so good. We start grinding a little. Then I say I have the feeling that you would prefer to just sit on the couch and talk here. She says Yes, let's do. We take a seat on the couch. I can tell she is very comfortable. I fire off the Soul Friends anchor and then I hold my hand just a fraction of an inch from her skin and start moving my hand up and down her arm as if to transfer energy to her, as she had done to me. I talk about the energy between two people. She says Your voice just mesmerizes me.

She slides us along the back of the couch to rest against the arm of the couch. Serious kissing ensues followed by heavy petting. Eventually we are horizontal. Her air conditioning is wholly inadequate and I am starting to perspire. She suggests that I remove my shirt. No problem. Petting continues. She complains of being hot and removes her shirt. ok. In time, more articles of clothing are removed in the interest of comfort. She must not be on her period anymore. I ask her Would it be cooler in your bedroom? She says Yes, I have a fan in there. We make our way to her canopy bed. Here the final articles of clothing are removed and I spend a great deal of time adoring her lovely soft ivory skin, flat hard stomach, and narrow hips. This woman still has the body of a girl. We cuddle for a while and she says This is too son. I say Yes, it is. We will just enjoy holding each other. Then she starts fondling herself and says David, do you like watching me? I say That is very exciting for me. She sees that it is and she reaches into her night stand and rips open a condom and together we plant the big anchor.

Eventually it is very late and I have to work the next day. Before I leave we make plans for a date for dinner on Saturday. Why? Because, DATES ARE FOR WOMEN YOU ARE ALREADY SLEEPING WITH!

David Shade

### **8.11 Maniac High's report, NYC's comments**

Amongst others, the following topics are being discussed in the report and its commentaries:

- how to recover from forgetting that you were supposed to meet with a girl
- when and when not to pay for a girl's dinner or movie or transportation etc
- how to deal with seemingly unreasonable objections (to kissing for example)
- how to plan a date

The **HB** Brains report by Maniac High, commentaries by NYC, **ASF**:  
Outing Report! Maniac fucks up, and then recovers (and feels up) **HB**  
Brains!

Here I fuck up, and think I meet her on Satuday. So I go out **sarging** with Mr. Lager on Friday, and she gets stood up, and waits for around half an hour before giving up, and making the 2 hr trip home.  
hahahaha OOPS!

When I get back home that night, I check my calendar, and realize I was supposed to meet HB Brains TONIGHT! Not the next day. Now I decide what to do. Usually, I would call and apologize (an AFC move I think), and then she'd spew at me, and then tell me she'll call me sometime when she is free again (which is usually never).

So tonight I decided to try something different. I call her up and confirm our meeting on Saturday. She says (sounding surprised) that she thought it was tonight. I say, NO, it is tomorrow, 8pm, as we agreed on the phone last weekend, and I expect you to come. She is totally deflated now, and she can't blow up at me. She asks to change it to 6pm because she has to be home early that night and she apologizes some more. so I agree (normally I wouldn't, but I know I fucked up, and it is entirely possible she has a real appt at 8pm, so I let it go.)

sweeeeet recovery. actually better than I expected I thought you were going for I thought it was saturday, not friday sorry let me make it up to you but sticking to your guns was excellent. very bold move altering reality it is easier for you since you don't speak each other's language, but still really nice.

The next day, she shows up, looking great, and apologizes again for her fuckup. I accept her apology, 'tisk tisk' her on the hand for it, and then keep holding her hand. I ask her if she ate (no. she says.). not surprised, she was on a train for 2 hrs., again (wink). I take her to the same bar that I took HB afro to. I like that place, because you can sit next to the chick and get kino right away without a table separating you from her. We order drinks, and a few plates of bar food.

good deal. it is STILL her fault, but you don't mind it and let's move on to the real stuff. good move on the kino spot too. tables impede your work also she WANTS to feel you on her, so if you can sit with her during dinner instead of sitting across from her, she can get hot while you fluff.

I also have a very small PC, and keep a bunch of photos on it (my house or family, friends, trips), so I showed her all of those.

That is nice as the screen is small and you have to get really close together to see the pictures clearly, and I described each one, and what I found or felt at that time. That worked, and is now at the limits of my Japanese. At this point, I am also massaging gently behind her ears, and she really likes that, as well as other places. I ask her how it feels good and she says yes, it is.

I have to admit that digital-camera or laptop PC with pictures thing is really great! pictures are TRULY worth a thousand words. I had a chick come over and I left her a picture album while I went to another answer: I kept hearing WOW as she was seeing me in places she has never been (like football stadiums and skiing in vermont) just seeing the pictures was like being there for her, PLUS she saw me as ABOVE other guys she knows because I go places and do things. I am not limited to this city by any means. I do what I want to do when I want to do it AND with several chicks that are MORE attractive than her and LESS attractive than her. more attractive = don't think I need you and less attractive = you have a chance to be with me if you play your cards right!

I ask her what her parents think of her, and she says party too much! I also ask her who she thinks is prettier, her or her older sister. she says me (yep, a budding HB.bitch shield in development, but not complete yet (wink) ) I also ask her what she likes to cook (setting up the come over home date), and she says she is bad. She suggests how about if I cook something. I reply, we'll do something together. She says 'ok'. We talk a little more, .We stay in the bar about 45

minutes, and then we go.

good

Re: paying for food, this time I make an exception, and pay.

Why? Because I found out during the talk, that she doesn't have a job as she is a full time student (first year) living with her folks. Most other chicks at least have a part time job, which she doesn't because HB brains studies really hard in school and she just turned 18. I was afraid that if I make her pay, she might be afraid to come out the next time because it is too much money for her. She offers though at the checkout, which is nice, so she is not like HB hotpants was (wink) the fact that she OFFERED is much more important than making her pay. the fact that she was PREPARED to pay is more important here. the same thing later when she buys her own ticket. she could have told you some bullshit about paying for her to go home. any chick worth ANYTHING is going to have enough money to get herself into and out of situations.

you HAD to pay this time for several reasons. you didn't want her to feel like going out with you was going to cost her money every time. she is ALREADY PAYING TO SEE YOU by taking the train. she is paying in money and TIME out of her life. 2 hours each way? show her a good time as a REWARD for the sacrifices she is making to come see you. make it worth her while. she is a student. you remember being a student, right? NO MONEY! you don't want her to think I can't go out with him because I need to save up for NOPE. you are not going to hook her with money anyway. you can't her parents pay for everything including the roof over her head. your money means SHIT! plus she is a GOOD student she will be making her own money son. you can't treat her like the HBs that have only looks going for them and NO EARNING POTENTIAL. for me it depends. I will feel out a student FIRST, then I will decide if I want the burden of dating her. if I don't, I keep it to things that are free (rollerblading, going to the park) or let her know that I'm not paying for shit and if she doesn't like that, she can go. otherwise, I will pay for dinner or a movie or whatever but NOT frivolous bullshit like oh buy me that thing in the window or buy me flowers or ANY TYPE BULLSHIT LIKE THAT! as long as it is an expense that involves us having fun and a great time together, I will absorb it as long as I have decided that's the right thing for me to do. some chicks don't appreciate and it does you no good to pay for shit. recognize that and lay down the law.

I won't do that for nothing though. you hook students with experiences and good times NOT money. chicks that have jobs and income deserve NOTHING because they are responsible for their own lives. even if a student has a part-time job, I know that she works MUCH HARDER for her money than I do. paying for her to have dinner with me gives her a great feeling and it is a gift from me to her, not a supplication also, she will REMEMBER why she has the money in her purse that she has there. she gets to buy that new miniskirt because YOU paid for her meal and entertainment for the night. she will remember you when she buys it and when she wears it.

feel free to pay for shit for students and poor chicks just be sure to get your money's worth out of it. not in the fashion of I paid so you have to fuck now but make sure that while you are paying money, you are demonstrating so much value to her that you are in a position where she sees you as ABOVE other guys not for your ability to pay, but because you treated her like she wanted to be treated and showed her a great evening. you don't have to repeat your performance EVER AGAIN! just let her know that you CAN treat her like that if she is willing to be YOUR WOMAN or at least one of them

Then I ask her the RJ question How do you know you have gotten a new BF or new relationship (so I can learn what to do with this chick. I find out then, how little Japanese I know; I cannot construct this sentence right, and she doesn't get it at all. I try to gesture to her it, and it's funny, but still doesn't get it. So I just say lets kiss, and I get a bec. I say, no, I want a REAL one. She dives in, and stays in for a little while.

how do you know you have a new boyfriend? when his dick's in her mouth? what

kind of question is that? or did you paraphrase?

After that, she backs off, and doesn't want to kiss anymore (I suspect 18yrs of inexperience are starting to come into play here).

never suspect SHIT! analyze the situation. what is different now from before?

who came in? who sees her? what did you do? what did she do? how is she feeling? once you start suspecting shit (when the action is on) you travel down roads of your own creation that have nothing to do with what is really going on. STAY IN THE GAME!

Once I see that isn't working, I take her to the dance floor, and we hang on to each other, but she is a little chilly still, but **kino** is good.

great. change venues. talking, holding and kissing TO dancing. change the atmosphere and attack from a new direction. the only thing you didn't change is seclusion. some chicks WILL NOT PERFORM IN PUBLIC! get them in the park bushes however and it's ON! you're still in public but NO ONE CAN SEE HER!

I try to kiss her again, not working at

all. Also, she cant dance worth shit. She bounces too much, and when we are holding each other, I get shaken all over the place (wink). We do this for a while, and **kino** is good, but kissing not going well. Finally, I just ask her straight out again like the first time, but no go (I know, **AFC** move, but I thought maybe she is just inexperienced, and wants you to ask). **Kino** dancing for a while, touching ears, putting hands over tits (no resistance), ass.etc. no problem. she likes it asking sucks dude :(

It is now 10:30, and she has to start to go home (she told me at the beginning that she is going with her family to a sushi party the next morning, so she has to be home that evening) as last train in her area is 12:30 and she has to catch it.

what happened to her 8:00 appointment?

I go out with her, and on the way back to the station. Out side the bar, I thank her for coming (I decided, if I get a kiss, I will walk her to the station, if not, I will blow her out). She says she has a nice time, I try to kiss her, and no resistance, tongue down begins. thats good. I start walking with her. A few minutes I just stop her and tongue her down again.no problem (this is getting better). We get to an intersection near people, and she doesn't want to kiss (too many people she says). .

see what I mean in the club = people = no action. outside = fewer people = action. intersection = people = no action.

did you ever consider that maybe she rode a train for 4 HOURS in one day to get LAID? next time fucking ISOLATE HER and fucking MAKE IT WORTH HER WHILE! let her know you appreciate what she does to come and see you and REWARD HER with a good fucking.

We cross, get to the station, she gets (and pays for)

her own return ticket, I tongue her down some more (no she should have paid for it just like that BITCH you went out with a long time ago should have paid for her bus fare. you don't need any chicks that you have to treat like your children.

resistance) and tell her I'll call tomorrow to set the next meeting. She goes through the ticket gates, and leaves, but doesn't look back at me (strange, considering the following below.)

awwwwwwww she didn't wook baaack awwwwwww

what is this? a MOVIE? hahahaha so what she didn't look back. there you go SUSPECTING again. chicks are ALIKE but not THE SAME. if 9 chicks look back at you and the 10th doesn't mark it down as s a FACT and move on. stop making it mean something.

It turns out she is busy every day, expect next Sunday, but I

cannot see her than, because I am shagging another chick that day. So we agree on the Tuesday night the week after this week.

ok now she is planning A WEEK IN ADVANCE to travel 4 HOURS to see you and you'd BETTER make it worth her while. ALSO do your groundwork over the phone. talk sex up to her so you know what your game plan is when she comes on Tuesday. DO NOT LET HER SEE YOU TUESDAY WITHOUT KNOWING IF SHE WANTS TO FUCK AND LETTING HER KNOW YOU LIKE HER SEXUALLY! do not ASSUME that since she was kissing you she KNOWS that you want to fuck her. make this date the MAKE DINNER AT MY PLACE date!

Now, my thoughts are that this is very bad, because usually, when there is such a gap in meeting a chick between dates, she loses all the good feelings from the time before, and its really hard to recover. When it takes more than 1 week between times I meet a chick, my success ratio goes WAY down I find in my records. (opinions on this guys?).

what do you want her to do? skip classes for YOU? miss her education for YOU? that's why I stay away from chicks that have too much scheduled in their lives like work and school and ESPECIALLY KIDS! when I get into a new woman, I want to see her every day for maybe a week, then cool out into a fucking-friendship. that see you next tuesday shit is fucked up she is busy. she has plans for the future. you HAVE to accomodate her schedule OR go to her so she doesn't have that time factor involved. see that? that's what I was saying about paying for her. you pay for her = she doesn't have to worry about making enough money to date you before she comes out. you going to see her = she doesn't have to pick a day when she has 4 hours of train time to spare. I am not SUGGESTING that you go see her at all. I am just saying that the distance is a factor in her decision-making process.

So when I meet her, I may have to take her to a bar first, to get her kino and relaxed again, BEFORE taking her to my place, as I am afraid for a 'freak out' if I take her over, and then try to get all the feelings back to where they were when I last saw her.

Do your groundwork over the phone! stop fucking shooting in the dark! unless you like it like that I personally don't like dating at all. I find prepared meetings to be boring and contrived. I like to meet women on the fly and make it happen wherever I am. the thrill for me is in the hunt not in everyday dating. I LIKE shooting in the dark I like not knowing what she's going to do and having to recover and regroup. the game is FUN for me. having an ENTIRE WEEK to mentally sarge a chick and throwing that away to GUESS is she going to fuck next tuesday is DUMB to me. I wouldn't do it. what if you meet a chick on monday that wants to fuck on tuesday? are you going to turn down a sure thing for a ? NO because you already did it. you already blocked her out for a SURE THING. so find out if this chick wants to be your SURE THING. that doesn't mean she is going to give it up when she gets in your face, but at least she has SAID she has plans to fuck!

Well, there you go. Thats the story so far on HB brains. Some other comments about this particular chick. Firstly, she is really naive about the dating game. I sense she is really inexperienced (might even be a virgin! dunno, should have asked actually, and kidded her about thiswill do next time), so there wasn't all the chick bullshit you usually get when you meet them. An example is the kiss thing. I could tell she was trying to follow certain 'rules', but I think she just didn't know what those 'rules' were. I got her laughing alot, and kino, and tonguing down alot at the end, so that is all good. I would have brought her back then, if the time thing wasn't a problem. (my fuckup, probably had I met her Friday night instead, as we had planned, she wouldnt have had to go home early, since I think she had planned it that way.)

you're probably right. chicks PLAN to see guys on nights when they KNOW they



can stay over if they need to. think about it. if her parents think she parties too much, that means she often STAYS OUT ALL NIGHT!

- Hey
- This is
- The end!

## The Gunwitch method

Okay, so you wanna get laid more right? DUH else you wouldn't be here. Maybe you are a fan of other works on seduction and discovered me through their sites, or maybe this is your first venture into the methods of seduction. Maybe you found me through the ASF (alt.seduction.fast) newsgroup, and you were one of the guys who requested and demanded an outline, or more of a specific manual of my style. Well anyway, you've now found my methods.

I'll tell you a little about myself, my name is Robert Ryan (known as gunwitch' on ASF). In case you wonder my name is derived from the fact that I am an avid hand gunner as well as a 10-year practitioner and student of seduction and PU (pick ups), real witchcraft, magick, state manipulation and all ranges of the influence sphere. I started out using simple psychology, then NLP (neural linguistic programming), and eventually evolved a much simpler understanding of women and methods of dealing with them, which has been gained through psychology and human study, but even more so through years of interactive analysis.

What simpler understanding you may ask? Well after YEARS and YEARS of study, fieldwork, and seductions, the thing that led me here was that I conquered my weight problem. I am 5'7 (5'9' in my field boots) and used to weigh a power lifter styled mix of muscle and fat that was 240 lbs. Not a pretty picture to look at, hence my study of seduction. I finally got down to a leaner, muscular 185 lbs. This is when I noticed a massive change in dealing with women. They made it easier - less testing, less flake outs, and less overall resistance to my sexing them.

I had always been taught that it is not the product, but the marketing, that gets someone to buy something. I had always learned that it's what's on the inside that counts. Also, that women think different from men, women don't really like sex so it doesn't matter what you look like, but more what you say or make them feel. Comforting words to the unattractive guy, But not something that produces results for the said guy.

Perhaps you're saying but then what am I gonna do? I'm an ugly, short or fat fucker! Well the same understandings and methods I discovered with the understanding that women LOVE sex, just as much as men do is gonna be your key to getting them as well. There are methods and tactics that will get you sex with HOT women even if you are less than average in looks. The same methods I and other semi attractive guys can use to land 8-10 scale women without hardly any rejection can be used by you to land the same women with just a little more effort, and a little more rejections.

I in so many words finally started selling a higher quality product, and in doing so learned what the reaction and interactions were like when she wanted to buy, and already knew what they were when it was gonna be a difficult sell. By becoming attractive it was easier for me to learn how to convey that I was. Since,

I have trained men who were FAT, ugly, average and good looking to do the same things I do and gotten them laid FAST without much study at all or any improvement to their looks.

So give this a chance, if you wanna get laid.

#### Section 1:

The first understanding you must have, is what I mean when I refer to a state. I simply mean your state of mind, the feelings in your body, and the overall YOU at any given moment. Can you recall a time, the last time that you were totally HOT and HORNY for a woman - to the point you had an erection, felt slight pain in your stomach, how you looked at her, and how you were thinking at the moment. What did that feel like? You were in sexual state at that point.

#### Section 2:

Women think VERY similarly, and operate biologically quite the same sexually as men. Since biblical times, women have been conditioned by society that this is wrong though. They put on a mask that conforms to social norms. The slut whore or promiscuous woman who has many sexual partners is actually superior in her lack of suggestibility compared to regular women who maintain monogamous relationships because of societal expectations. Things had not been this way in the human mating ritual prior to the last 2-5000 years. Beta (inferior less attractive) males who happened to be intellectually superior set up misogynistic arranged marriages, barter systems for financial ownership of wives, religious persecution and moral persecution for women who enjoyed sex with the alpha (superior more attractive) males, as a means of being able to secure sex for themselves with no alpha competition.

Today, religion, moral conduct, and societal expectations cannot RULE the female sex drive, nor her instincts and her desires by force. This leads us ALL to a problem. Women seek and choose long term relationships with only the most desirable of men. They often try to entrap the alpha male into unnatural sex commitments, while giving the beta male no sex because they want to have one partner, and do not want it to be a beta male. Kinda backfired on them cheeky little shit heel betas didn't it?

Now women cheat when they want sexual variety and then are scorned by society as sluts or unfaithful bitches, despite the reality that it's just natural for a sexually healthy human being to want variety in sex partners.

It is VITAL to have the understanding that women (sexually healthy non frigid women) LOVE sex and desire it just as much as we do. YET they cannot come out and admit it or be labelled a slut, AND cannot act on it consistently (outside of long term relationships or with multiple partners) with anyone's knowledge or be labelled the same far faster. Of course, as of late, more and more women are admitting their desire for sex and acting on it more casually.

#### Section 3:

The lone wolf.

Approaching single, lone women will be the staple of your sexual diet. Attempting to seduce women while in the company of others, her friends, your friends, and other people in general is often a dumb idea. WHY, you ask? Read section 2 again. They want sex, they want sex NOW with almost any guy who isn't obese or deformed, but they do not want the world to know, and they will start to think if I do this what will it make THEM think, rather than do I trust this guy am I attracted to this guy and what is he making ME feel sexually. Reading this material from the standpoint of applying it at a party or in front of 2-3 women at a time will make it seem unworkable. So read from the perspective of you and a single lone (isolated) woman, or distanced from

others (semi isolated), and it will come into focus.

#### Section 4:

Your initial state when seeing women you want is very important: the right one will cause you to approach them, the wrong one will panic and confuse you - preventing you from taking any action to ever meet them. If you do not meet them you almost certainly CANNOT have sex with them. Your internal state when you first see an attractive woman must be one of sexual enthusiasm, horniness, and unapologetic desire. NOT one of panic and wonder of what to do or what to say. When you first see your lone wolf, in a bar, a coffee house, a dept store, a bank, the gym -ANYWHERE - (I like the magazine racks at dept stores, where I can stand there and wait til some Cosmo magazine reading hottie comes into what feels to her like your space, and feels like she's approaching, then boom I'm on it so what ya reading?), anyway ANYWHERE you see them you must imagine having sex with her, visualize it, feel the desire and lust. ALWAYS do this as soon as you see a woman you find attractive and eventually the state you will go into when seeing a woman will be one of -sexual- state, rather than panic or fear of meeting her. This makes approaching random lone women easier. Ted Bundy, the infamous serial killer/sociopath didn't feel fear or panic when he saw a target. He felt rage, sexual perversion and desire to kill, hence NO fear to approach them, of course wanting to have sex isn't the same thing, but its still more effective than feeling fear or confusion about your desires and direction.

One thing ill mention here. I cannot give you real desire for sex, it must be natural. If you could have a new ULTRA 10 hot bodied perfect woman in your bed every night, yet EVERYONE else would see her as a nasty ugly fat girl, would you still do it? NO I'm not gonna alter you in some supernatural way for you to think ugly women are good looking. If you said no to this question though, you need to evaluate if you want women for shared sexual gratifications, or if you want them to impress friends, family and co workers? Do you wanna be a ladies man A seduction master? the scoring machine amongst your buds? Of course, who doesn't? But is that more of a concern than actually having good sex with women you find attractive? If so then you need to A. stop masturbating so much (to increase you drive), B. search yourself to see if you are a real heterosexual, C. maybe consider getting an arm piece girlfriend for the social status you desire, D. learn to quench your lusts with sexual gratification rather than keep trying to create envy in others, as you'll never be convinced you've done enough of that. If you want and desire new, exciting, frequent sexual experiences with different fresh women then read on.

#### Section 5:

Understand that women do not have some kind of special intuition about people, see Ted Bundy example above for proof. A lot of crap floats around about female minds being different or more intuitive, they can smell an agenda if you don't come from a genuine place of curiosity and care they will reject you blah blah blah. You WANT them to smell your agenda of wanting sex, this is a GOOD thing, as long as it isn't verbalized. This is what women call a subtle confident man. I will discuss how to MAKE her understand your intentions WITHOUT words later on. It is a good thing for her to know you want sex, without you being tacky and verbalizing it (making her reject you because of her societal conditioning mentioned earlier).

#### Section 6:

Looks count, though perhaps not as much as is typically presumed. As was discussed in Section 2, women think MUCH like men when it comes to mating.

To illustrate my point on this:

Imagine being alone in a room, with an ugly or mediocre woman. She comes over

and lays her head on your lap. You hear her whisper, I like you a lot. She smiles, comes up, and kisses you. Your friends are not there, and they will never know. You are getting more turned on as she rubs your upper legs, inching closer, closer, and closer to your crotch. What are you gonna do to stop her? Answer this only to yourself - not to friends or people who could judge you - and you'll know that you'd likely have sex with her. ONLY in the case that she is nearly deformed, smells bad, or is morbidly obese ect., would you be likely to turn her down. Essentially, you'd only turn her down if she failed turn you on at that time.

To further explicate, consider the following. Not an exact science by any means, but perhaps a rough model of what you can generally expect.

Looks, Effort, and their Interrelation:

Looks scale: -1- being the worst conceivable, and -10- being the best.  
Effort scale (amount of women approached and overall drive to ensure sex with them): -1- being utterly rarely, -5- being a few on weekends or acquaintances from social circles, and -10- being at least three new women per day. -1- drive = will say hello to a woman but not much else, -5- will try to get her interested in him until the first sign of trouble or disinterest, -10- will outright make her become angry or verbally reject you 100% before even considering moving on.

Take a guy who is a -1- in looks (perhaps fat, short, hideous face, balding, old, smelly, poorly dressed, etc.), but a -10- in effort. This guy will STILL land women who are -5.5s- once in while, and -3s- frequently.

To explain, allocate 1 total point for every 2 points on the scale, for what you can get with maximum effort. So, if you are a -10- in looks, but only exert a -1- in effort, you can probably still sex -5.5s- (ie. 11 divided by 2) on occasion, and approximately half of that, or -3s-, whenever you are inclined. Eventually you will arrive at someplace in between your -maximum-capacity and your -easy- capacity for your regular quality of women.

I, for instance, am maybe an -8- in looks (short, ok face, good built body, well dressed and groomed), and a -10- in effort. So dividing by two, we allocate 4 points for looks and 5 points for effort, arriving at a 9 at -maximum- capacity, and approx. 5 at -easy- capacity. I have of course gotten some 10s in my day, but that's just the deviation, as women higher than 6 would be for Example Guy #1. So to recap:

Example Guy 1:

-1-LOOKS + -10-EFFORT = 11,  
THEREFORE,  
MAXIMUM CAPACITY = 5.5, EASY CAPACITY = approx. 3

Gunwitch:

-8-LOOKS + -10-EFFORT = 18,  
THEREFORE,  
MAXIMUM CAPACITY = 9, EASY CAPACITY = approx. 5

What creates the extra points from effort is that you meet MORE women, so SOME of these women will find even the guy with -1-looks/-10-effort somewhat attractive. Probably the best that he will ever do is a 6 who somehow finds him attractive. Mr -10-looks/-1-effort could go out approaching at a 5.5 in effort and change his whole lot, because he would meet so many more women who would find him attractive, or who have trouble saying no to his advances, but instead he takes the easy ones. His loss. By the way, Mr.-10-looks/-1-effort, and Mr. -1-looks/-10-effort are both REAL people that I know, and it works out about the same for both of them with women. If Mr. -1-looks/-10-effort suddenly stopped meeting and trying to seduce new women, he would probably go to his grave never having had sex again, unless maybe with some chance woman of his

low calibre were to come along and make the effort herself.

## Section 7

There are -many- ideas about seduction, getting laid, having a lot of women, ect, that can be debated and contested. But there is -one- that cannot be by anyone with any rational thought process. You **MUST** make an effort. Specifically, you must approach women on the street, at gyms, dept stores, bars, nightclubs and any other venues you can come up with. Sure you can get a job working with women or a gimmick to try to attract them to you, but its 5% as effective as actually doing the work, and having the will and drive. Simple logic, which can escape from you if you over-complicate your style of dealing with women. Don't just sit and memorize materials til the end of time, get out and apply things you learn. **HARDEST** part to do in any area of life. **WILLPOWER** to try is more important than any formula for success.

I'm gonna do you a huge favour right here in this section. Maybe give you ultimate success with women maybe save you from reading any further and wasting your time. Decide will you A, go out and try this stuff on **AT LEAST** 1 woman within the next week, and at least 1 every week after that? OR, will you stop reading now and decide you don't really have the willpower to try?

Of course if you **KNOW** you are just reading this for the hell of it, and don't wanna have sex with lots of women that's fine. But don't read it, question it, analyze it and determine it can't work for you, get up and do something.

## Section 8

As **HARPED** on above you **MUST** approach. Moreover, you **MUST** be in sexual state or be turned-on/horny for your target. Any fear of doing so must be quelled by the realization that she wants sex just as much as you do, though maybe not with you, and that the way society is structured it is **YOUR** job to initiate the encounter and find out. The sexual state, along with the realization that she wants sex, will make you do **MOST** if not **ALL** of the actions necessary to be your most attractive all by themselves.

It exudes a confidence that,

- makes you speak with a better more attractive tone of voice (bedroom voice)
- causes you to hold eye contact better and more sensually
- causes you to touch her more and more sexually (getting her ready for the sexual encounter)
- causes you to keep a level of physical closeness that builds a strong sense of comfort in her
- causes you to not pander or be a beggar (as you realize are just as valuable sexually), so,
- you don't buy her drinks like the rest of the losers do
- you don't give insincere compliments like the rest of the losers do
- you don't pander to her to entertain like the rest of the losers do
  - you don't brag like the losers do
  - you don't come off sexually androgynous and hide your masculinity like the losers do

And as a result of all this, you are not branded yet another everyday chump hitting on her.

Your single-minded intention, body language, and sexuality prevents the bad loser type actions, and nurtures the seductive ones - all in one single state. You are branded a sexual being, boyfriend material, sexual material, IF the requisite physical attraction is there.

## Section 9

I will now attempt to give you some grasp of the above seductive behaviours



that will create an optimum level of attraction, and some grasp of those that will make you seem a loser or move things in the wrong directions.

Operating under an understanding that women love sex, need their desires filled the same as men, and shouldn't be paid or rewarded for something they want to share just as much as you do, will allow you to avoid the damning behaviours covered in section 9.

9.1 Chump or champ? The chump thinks women GIVE a man sex because its more important to them, and they should be paid for it by means such as dates undeserved compliments, humour, entertainment ect. A champ knows women love sex just as much as men so therefore the gift that is given in return for sex with a woman is the sex itself. Which are you? When was the last time you complimented a woman? Was it a woman that you wanted sex with? Have you ever complimented a woman you didn't want sex with? Have you ever complimented someone for something other than their appearance? Ask yourself these questions and you'll know if you are acting like a chump or a champ.

9.2 Do you brag around women? Well stop it if you do. If she isn't attracted to you, and even if she is, this isn't moving things into any kind of a sexual encounter. It is a waste of time and energy to brag, as everyone can see it when someone does it, and takes the claims made as lies, even if they are true. BE SEXUAL, as this serves to project without words that you are good in bed, well endowed, and worthwhile enough to be this confident. Of course don't put yourself down either. This is very powerful knowledge that I'm giving you here, which few people know, and since I have a 130 IQ I can decipher this type of thing.

See that was bragging and it was kinda lame huh? That was a joke, and ALSO not a good idea during a seduction. Here is why.....

9.3 A commonly observed scenario: a woman laughs at guy's jokes, and then ends up having sex with him later on. Predictably, every guy there says, She must like a guy with a sense of humour, and proceed to go out and ENTERTAIN, rather than seduce women, in hopes that she will like them SO much she will jump his bones right there. Not gonna happen unless she is VERY attracted. We wanna work with what looks we have and move them in the right directions for sex better than other guys, not create a non sexual rapport with jokes and funny stories.

When a woman is asked what do you like in a guy?, she doesn't usually say LOOKS and GOOD SEX or else be branded a slut. SO, she grumbles a guy with a sense of humour. She LIKES those funny men, she doesn't HAVE SEX WITH those funny men unless they happen to be attractive as well as funny. By the way, when a woman says confidence that's as close to saying a guy who knows I wanna have sex and creates the opportunity for it aggressively as women usually get. Don't listen to what women (or men) say, but rather observe what they do, and your eyes will not deceive or confuse you like your mind's interpretations of the words will. A sense of humour isn't a bad thing, but its not sexually motivating or progressive. Stand up comedians are often natural entertainers because they have learned that their poor looks can be accepted that way. Check stand or bar stool comedians are the same entity with less talent. At the end of the night they go home and fuck the sleeve of their favourite jacket rather than a woman. Some people say nice guys finish last, because they see the funny entertainer go home alone. While the horny aggressive jerk gets the woman sexually turned on and moves her into isolation with him, rather than entertaining her endlessly in public.

9.4 Payment based behaviours such as buying drinks for women at bars, giving them flowers, fixing their things, driving them places you aren't going with her to, are all LOSER actions. Of course people like things like this, but these things conveys to her sexuality as he isn't valid sexually because he is

a poor lover or has a small penis, so he pays for sex with gifts of his time and money, he is a beta male. During ALL initial encounters with women, if requests are made for anything, ask yourself would I do this for a casual acquaintance or male stranger? If your answer is no, then don't do it. Of course you might buy a good friend accompanied to a bar a drink, but would you really buy a male stranger a drink? Didn't think so, unless it was to PAY him for something. Wanna test it out? Go buy 10 women at a bar a drink, and see if you don't walk out alone with 4-5 thank yous, a glare, and 4-5 waves of astonishment for your troubles. Do it 100 times and you may get a girl that's REALLY attracted to you that will engage sex with you, but you've now paid 500 dollars (5 bucks a drink) to get there. Go to a brothel if you want to pay for sex like a lowly john'.

9.5 Reading her palm, doing a psychic cold reading, doing a handwriting analysis, playing a game of some kind ARE all LOSER behaviours as well. You may get lucky and she won't decipher that you are paying her with this entertainment and brand you a poor lover or micro penis equipped man, but it STILL does not move them into a sexual direction of any kind, so don't waste the time. Besides, tampering with these mystic forces is a one-way ticket to eternity in hell, ha ha ha.

9.6 Speaking romantically or about wonderful states of mind and such may brand you a good boyfriend or husband material, which may eventually lead you to sex with her. It will go WITH her social conditioning rather than busting through it and getting to the natural woman who likes sex. However, she will most times make you wait or want to date first in this context. Making the guy wait is a time-honoured bullshit social conditioning that being romantic or Don Juan Casanova style will get you into 75% of the time with any given women. This is STILL paying for sex, just in a more effective though more time consuming way than other standard suck up tactics. Do this kind of thing AFTER sex if you want to see her again and pursue a long-term relationship. There is no more sure-fire way to get a woman into a romantic relationship than to have sex with her right away, because unless she has one night stands A LOT she will justify her break in conditioning with it was love at first sight or we just had such a good chemistry I couldn't make my new boyfriend wait. By the way get caller id if you are gonna have a lot of one night stands, or avoid the woman knowing where you live or your phone number. The same dynamic I just wrote about will cause women to stalk you and demand relationships, if you aren't ready for one be prepared to say get lost a lot.

Entertainment, gimmicks and flattery can only buy you RAPPORT with women, they do not build attraction or guarantee sex. If after using something like this to get a rapport, you find yourself in bed with a girl, she would've been there FASTER if you hadn't used the pandering, entertaining and ass kissing beforehand. CONSERVE YOUR TIME, creativity, and passion for women who are actually attracted to you.

9.7 DATES: NO DATES from here on out. The simple act of going on a date immediately puts her social conditioning into play HEAVY and the make him wait dynamic is introduced. I have NEVER been on a date with a woman, and I have had plenty of sex. Get the woman isolated with you (alone. just you and her out of public) soon after the initial approach for your date aka getting to know each other. I'll discuss how to do this later on.

9.8 NO PHONE NUMBERS, from here on out, you can go out and get 10 numbers a day for 30 days, that's 300 numbers, of those 300 maybe ONE will end up in bed with you after you call. If on all 300 you had stayed there after you approached, conveyed your sexual state, waited for her to go into sexual state, and then isolated her, you would have only approached 50 tops the whole month as you would have been too preoccupied in bed with 10 of those 50, avoiding another 250 approaches. If she finds you at all attractive she will talk to you right then and there, and most likely if you play the game right go home with you that day

or from that bar, or into the sex room at a party.

Of course calling a woman, buying her a gift or going on a date with her inside the context of a relationship is fine, but not before she's proven herself attracted to you enough for sex to happen.

#### Section 10: Sexual state broken down.

Sexual state is THE most important thing you will learn from this guide. It is THE mind state you will be using to deal with women you want to sleep with. It is most likely the mind state you've had every time you ever sexed a woman in the past, at least as soon as the point came when you KNEW it was gonna happen. There is a certain walk like a duck acts like a duck, must be a duck dynamic working for you in the sexual state. If you act like her lover, act like you are in a sexual encounter and assume the behaviours and actions of a great lover, she eventually will start to think you are a waterfowl. Just kidding, of course she starts to go into the same states of mind from other sexual encounters she has had in the past, if she is at all attracted. This is what's called rapport congruency. You can look it up if you want to read 300 pages of dime store psychology, but suffice to say, if all the actions and states are present your mind kinda starts to assume it's the same situation, a milder form of déjà vu.

Furthermore, when someone perceives something in someone, but isn't directly told to them verbally by the person, they tend to think it's THEY who are the ones imagining it - that it comes from within them. That's why I tell you later to not verbalize your sexual intent in any way, as when you don't, she will more likely to think, Why am I thinking sexually about this guy....hmmm I must want him or else I wouldn't see him as such a horny guy.

The sexual state is readily stepped into by imagining how you interacted with your last lover when in the bedroom before sex, or during pillow talk, and had a lustful desire for the woman. These are the things that it should encompass. These specifics are not to be used individually, but as an overall state that you go into when dealing with a woman. Read Bruce Lees Tao of Jeet Kune Do for an understanding of not focusing on specific technique but rather on overall strategy that encompasses several techniques. My method has been compared to this type of fluid theory, contrasting other seduction methods that are closer to classical Karate, which focuses on memorized techniques that take longer to master, and are harder to remember under stress. What follows is more of a troubleshooting guide.

10. Sensual eye contact (EC). Proper eye contact with a woman is an important piece of your sexual state. The bedroom eyes are something you will need to convey during the encounter, since you want her to develop them as well, as she gets more and more comfortable with you and begins to mirror your actions and vibe. Bedroom eyes are also much more attractive than darting or fearful eyes.

10.1 Closeness, or for the nit picks physical proximity to her is also very important. Since you aren't gonna be seductive or sensual standing 2 feet away from her, you need to be within 6-8 inches of her - VERY CLOSE. You slowly move into this as you sense her loosening up a bit. Of course good breath is a crucial at this point. Brush your tongue and FLOSS those back molars out so your mouth doesn't smell like something that passed through the system of a morbidly obese 10-year-old boy. See conversation section for why not to say that last sentence in front of a woman, as well.

10.2 Touch her. Since touch is the first step in getting her comfortable with you as a sexual creature, you want to sneak this in slowly. A good progression is: hands, arms, lowers back, upper back, face (while whispering something to her) and hair, then thighs (hand placed but relatively stationary), and upper

legs. You should NOT look at you hands as you touch her, as this alerts her to a question - is it ok to touch there? in dynamic. Also, her eyes will follow your eyes to the touching and it will be unnatural, thus questioned by her or rejected. Touching also shows that confidence, and may alert her to your being good with women, a fine lover, and confident lover. It demonstrates, I am not afraid to touch women, because women like to be touched by me, to her inner workings.

Touch early on also is a HUGE time saver, if she is so uncomfortable with you touching her right from the start as to physically or verbally stop it, NOTHING you say or do, short of saving her life is gonna get her into a sexual state for you.

10.3 Tone of voice should be that of a sexual tone. You can't run up yelling like Adolf Hitler at a nazi youth rally speech, or mumbling and stammering like Woody Allen. NOT SEXY. Not talks like a duck. Imagine you are talking to a former or current girlfriend in a bed and about to have sex. You soften your voice, you deepen your voice, you speak slower and with an inflection of optimism and kindness. Not your regular speaking voice but YOUR sensual sexual voice. They were right when they said just be yourself they just never told you what self to be.

Simply sliding into the sexual state will usually encompass the above behaviours inside of itself. Overall these are the medium sized chunks of sexual state, the large being be horny, and the small likely being to many to ever be fully understood. The small chunks may encompass micro facial expressions, body positioning, or even ESP (extra sensory perception) . Its like how knowing there are vitamins A, C, D in a fruit, and taking those things out and using them in a pill, doesn't give you all of the undiscovered things that are inside a fruit that may be beneficial. We just KNOW A,C,D are essential for good health. It's the same here, we know that sections 10.1,2,3 of this guide are the medium chunks of what's essential, and we know that eating the fruit is essential (natural sexual state). Lets just live naturally rather than trying to condense it all into a pill or formula and ENJOY eating the fruit (being horny) that gives us all we need.

Now, advanced deal here. Not really a part of sexual state itself, but an obstacle to it sometimes and dealing with it.

10.4 State matching. Quickly notice her state before you approach, is she UP, kinda down, or laughing a lot? STAY in the sexual state, but keep your actions kind of similar to hers so as to not break her state entirely, causing you to be seen as intrusive (breaking rapport). You want to convey the sexual state, but you don't wanna break her state either. This is another reason lone wolfs are easier to go for, as they usually aren't in some kind of group state of ruckus or laughter ect. You can approach women in strange states by matching theirs once you get far more advanced, but go more for the calm ones at first. This takes a butload of practice to get down, but as I said this is a trouble-shooting section and not techniques to obsess on.

As an example of state matching WHILE conveying sexual state: Imagine your girlfriend just got home from work she's EXCITED as hell about a promotion she got at work. Now you've been waiting all day to have sex with her, but you wouldn't just walk up and go sexual on her because it might break her state and cause her to kind of reel back. Instead, you would put your arms around her and say some sort of wow that's great, in about half the excitement level she has. This will curb her excited state slightly enough for her to begin recognizing your sexual state.

So say she's really down because her cat just died, you kinda get a little bit down too, but not completely as down as she is. This makes her kinda follow you into the less depressed state, enough so that she can pickup on your sexual

state. She of course assumes it's HER sexual state, since you aren't saying anything sexual and she just perceives it. So, I must be horny cause I'm so sad or getting excited about this promotion got me excited about other things as well is what she thinks. Of course it works a little less on strangers than a girlfriend, as they don't yet see you as a sexual outlet (except by virtue of being a man and having a penis). So it takes them some time to say why am I horny for this guy.

Simple huh? No? Sorry, this last one takes some field practice to get down.

## Section 11

What to say. What you say isn't that important - rather, its how you present yourself to her. Still you need to talk or be labelled an alien so here goes. Simple advice and techniques, as the sexual state, is FAR more important to convey than what you say to her is.

The opener, as I said can just be simple a hi, hello, or you from around here ect. Introduce yourself at some point with your FULL name, first and last. People used to do this and it had a touch of class, dignity, pride and authority. Now its like, I'm Dan, I don't have a last name I'm just Dan, I'm simple Dan . Also being on first and last name basis is good, as she won't feel like a slut for having sex with some guy who she can't delude herself to think she knows. Get used to introducing yourself this way all the time and within 6 months it'll be natural so you don't have to think about it.

Say her first name a few times after meeting her, like before a question - Becky, how do you find yourself in Los Angeles? Many psychologists say that hearing your name from someone builds a connection, as they usually only hear it from friends, family, and people they like. Don't obsess on these small details, but if you can remember to work it into your convo, great. So long as its not at the expense of breaking your sexual state, and failing to convey that to her. Might be a buncha pop psychology bullshit anyway. Try to get used to doing it though, as it can't really hurt anything and may help.

The conversation. You don't need to worry about what you aren't saying to get into women's pants. It's what you're saying to keep you -out of them- that you need be concerned about. Try not to swear so much you fucking asshole, its not really sexy. Don't talk about puke, shit, piss, ejaculate, death, your horrid job, her horrid job, illness, religion, politics, rape, child molestation, pornography, or SEX (yes that's right no sex talk, being sexual yet tactful with your words is what women call subtle, and as was mentioned, gets them thinking sexually EASIER than saying it outright). Nothing NEGATIVE. You don't wanna talk about her problems or negative things, so if it comes up change the subject. Otherwise, she'll tend to associate negative things with you. It's the same problem that talking about romance and love ect, causes, except in reverse. You don't wanna talk about these things that she associates as GOOD with you, because it will prod her to put you into a dating make him wait start a relationship frame of reference. The same goes for negative topics. You want the topics as neutral. People underestimate the power of just getting to know each other as a comfort builder between folks, so they complicate it with LOADS of say this, say that armchair psychology.

Just get to know each other as you convey your sexual state, and watch for hers to appear. Where are you from?, what do ya like bout the area, what's your favourite TV show?, why do you like it?, what do you like to do for fun, ok well IDEALY what would you LIKE to do for fun? (they never DO what they like for fun, but like to talk about it). Keep it light -> getting to know each other before we fuck kinda dynamic. More important to stay in sexual state than to try to say the right thing or get her to think this about me by saying this ect. Have some fucking curiosity about people you are



gonna do the wamba mamba with would ya! Her imagining you doing your hobbies, watching the same TV show, going out to the same drive in ect, gets her to imagine you as a normal person, not some guy with a van, ball gag, camera equipment, and a pistol outside waiting to lure her into the lead role of a snuff film.

The power of me too-ing. Saying, oh my god that's so true, or me too I love that ect even when it's a lie, makes you seem more meant to be or compatible. This is the best verbal technique I've come across yet. Opposites attract? BULL, people hook up with people who are in the same kind of place mentally, or at least who are somewhat agreeable with their little model of the world.

Let her get to know you. If she's at all attracted the conversation will get 2 sided within a minute or so.

BIGGEST OF ALL, don't leave, eject, walk off ect just because there is a lull in conversation. She may like you ALOT but she's nervous and can't think of much to say. You just haven't verbally connected yet or found out anything about each other. Do you know how many people have lost the love of their life because they didn't give it 5 more seconds? 910,876,531 that's how many! No I don't fucking know, but GET REJECTED, don't just walk off. make the ho say no

Not a lot of conversation material here huh? Well most guys who are getting bikini models and strippers, as well as all other women into bed, have NO scripts, NO hypnosis phooey, and NO lines. They are just acceptably attractive enough, even slightly overweight, maybe a little short, maybe a kinda odd looking, BUT GO FOR IT! They don't hide their sexuality and they persist where other men tuck tail and run.

I commonly get snubbed, the cold shoulder ect or overall rejected with the women I have sex with right away, but I just persist and eventually things take a turn. You love to breath right? Well I don't care how bad a fart is lingering around you are eventually gonna say shit I love to breath I think its worth it to smell the fart. Air = sex, bad fart smell = your love handles, bad teeth, short stature or balding head in this metaphor. Cyanide gas = morbid obesity, stinky armpits, deformities and such. They'd rather hold their breath forever = rather go without sex than have it with him.

## Section 12

Watching for her sexual state. As you maintain your sexual state and convey it to her (as you're get to know each other), the MAIN key is watching for her to finally move into sexual state herself. THIS is when the iron is hot, and you must strike while that iron is hot. This is when you isolate her (as in lone wolf example, and in mildly unattractive woman getting guy alone example).

The keys to recognizing her sexual state coming to be are again something difficult to explain but EASY to recognize. Good explanations are: she lowers eyes and smiles coyly at you, starts to look at your crotch or touch you back sensually, gets flushed and seemingly embarrassed (son to be bareassed), and starts to stare hornily at you and play with something in her hands slowly. These types of things are strong indicators. As you deal more and more with women, you'll get to know a sexual state in a woman more readily.

Its kinda like you both are in sexual state, you know it, she knows it, she knows you know it, and you know she knows it, so its time to isolate and make bacon (had to add a tasteless reference in there, ask me about hot buttered corn some time while not in mixed company).

## Section 13

ISOLATE. You cannot have sex with women in public or in front of people with

any consistency. If that's your bag, try it with women you are already in a relationship with. You have to get her alone with you. ANY opportunity to isolate BEFORE going into sexual state should be taken as well of course.

A semi-isolation is a good tactic at bars during the seduction stage. She will undoubtedly have friends with her who will up her social conditioning, AND try to ruin sex for the 2 of you out of jealousy or concern for her safety. This tends to happen BEFORE you've gotten her amped up sexually enough to snub them and come with you. At a bar, when you see a group and want one of them, WAIT for her to leave the herd, wait for her to be coming out of the bathroom (not IN as she may have to piss bad), wait for her to go to the bar to get a drink, wait for her to be ALONE to approach, and then try to keep her from her friends. Take her to the dance floor, ask her to another part of the club to shoot pool or talk (its quieter over there). In public this isn't so easy, they will think you are weird if they catch you watching them. So when in public, if you've just GOTTA try for a girl in a group, get a phone number and chalk it up as a loss. Or, if you've got balls of steel, sit down and try it out. Then, watch in horror as the friends ruin it. In public, don't try to entertain these groups to get in; it's a waste of time that could be spent on a lone wolf.

A full isolation (your house, her house, your back seat, a broom closet, a sex room at a party ect) is for after you see her go into a sexual state. What you say isn't important, lets save some money and go back to MY place and have some drinks (at a bar), I'm having a barbecue up at my place later you wanna come up and listen to some music for a while (when in public), or you should come over to my place and check out my weight equipment (at the gym). Once they are in sexual state they are ITCHING for ANY opportunity, so you don't need some smooth line. Lets go in here to a sales clerk as I opened the door to a storage room, worked once.

Of course if a girl NEVER goes into sexual state for a long period of time, you just try to isolate her anyway and make the ho say no. NEVER eject. Always either get either a lay, or a rejection. Only TWO options. Don't bail out by getting a number or something. The ONLY time you get a number is if she is totally strapped for time and making excuses of that nature, and in that case call her once and don't think about her again. Basically phone numbers are for when you really don't even care if you sex her or not, or you don't care to expend the energy involved in the particular situation or dynamic.

#### Section 14 (hey I'm superstitious)

The close. Once isolated, the words why don't you come sit with me? or why don't you come lay down here? are CHAMPION. Of course in a broom closet you just press up against the wall and start kissing. At home after you get her laying with you or sitting on your lap ect, you start to touch her even more at this point, stroking her hair saying it smells nice (HER HAIR YOU PERVS), you then get a good eye contact going and go in for a kiss, give her a soft light kiss with no tongue at first, keep this going until things progress to French kissing, give a good 30 minutes of foreplay to get her REALLY turned on so that she doesn't give last minute resistance. Clothes don't come off for 15-20 minutes, panties don't come off for 25-30 minutes. Then you are on your own, I'm not godamn Dr. Ruth.

14.1 the last minute problem with sex. This happens sometimes, she'll say I don't know you enough ect. When this happens don't get mad or upset ect. Just say, I understand or ok, this is nice though huh? then go back to necking and making out. Eventually go back in for the sex, if happens again say I understand and go back in for more kissing and making out, and repeat until it goes through. Hell even if she never gets ready, what have you got better to do than make out with some hot little number? You've got no real make the ho say no style of getting a close or getting a rejection to work with at this point,

as she already has said no but MAY change her mind. DO NOT struggle or tug or bear weight on her at this stage, as that is considered rape. Use persistence not force, and you'll be ok.

## Section 15

Relations with women. This isn't integral to the system just some advice I'd like to dispense, which you may find useful in dealing with women. I'm no relationship expert but these have been ideal ways of looking at things in my experience.

15.1 Relationships are really based on attraction. If one partner knows they can do better they will usually treat the other party poorly or not reciprocate the attention. If you are a 5 and want a long lasting relationship that you feel some love in, find another 5 with a compatible personality. Of course, you'll know you can do better (with these skills), but you'll also know they can't.

Less jealousy, insecurity, and overall hidden desire to get someone better. You get with a 3 and you are a 5, and you won't feel much of anything for them in the way of passion and desire, so you'll make them kinda miserable and insecure. You get with a 10 and you'll know you can get another one (with these skills) but your attraction will cause you a rampant level of lust and desire that just isn't reciprocated. That will just make you feel like shit all the time. Kinda the only people I fall in love with don't love me back syndrome, so common these days.

15.2 In ANY relationship a good method to avoid pain, mess, and eventual heartbreak is to ALWAYS look at how you are being treated and how the relationship makes you feel. NOT at what you feel for them. To do this gauges the base level of passion and attraction she has to you. At the FIRST discomfort or pain caused by the woman in your life, LEAVE. Make her crawl back and apologize. Following this method will set boundaries that will last. You leave and won't take her calls, and she has to crawl back to you crying the first time she yells at you holds out sex or hurts you in some way, and there probably won't be a second serving of that dish. It's hard to do, but it's important to your well-being. Jaded? Flighty? No. I'd say smart, as it doesn't drag out something that's gonna end anyway, leaving you hurt worse than if it had ended sooner. It is far better to resist at the beginning than at the end - somebody clever.

15.3 If a relationship goes bad, or hurts at all, and is dragging out as friendship or such, CUT IT CLEAN and you'll get over it sooner. If you don't it may drag on for a long time, with you getting degraded and rejected. These kinds of relationships drain you in all other areas of life, try to avoid them at all costs, but if you find yourself in one, RUN! Work it out with someone new, the next one with a clean slate who hasn't pushed so far into your boundaries yet.

When women love us, they forgive us everything, even our crimes; when they do not love us, they give us credit for nothing, not even our virtues - Balzac.

15.4 When you are in the grasp of love and obsession over a girl always ask, If I could have sex and a relationship (if I wanted one) with the next 10 beautiful women I see, would I forget that I ever knew the one I am with right now? If yes, you would, you don't love her. You are sex-addicted and probably putting up with way too much shit. Its time to have a showdown with her, unless she's just a fancy of yours or a stranger of course, in that event its time to try to sex her. Also ask yourself when in an LTR or when being just friends, if I could come and have sex with this woman as frequent as I want, but would

lose ALL other activities and conversations with her, would I trade that? If you would only want her for sex, don't put up with her shit if she's giving you any. Don't waste time with someone you really don't enjoy, when you could be out finding something more enjoyable and compatible, ALONG with sex in that time spent.

15.5 Women soth issues. A break up from a long term relationship can be murder on your limbic system, self esteem and well being. The main reason for this is that you have mental issues you've learned to deal with. A woman comes along who not only makes your dealing with those issues easier, but quells them altogether. She makes you feel desirable to women, makes you feel like a good lover, makes you feel like someone worthy of love. She leaves, BOOM, you aren't only missing her ability to quell these issues, but NOW have to learn to deal with them and get used to them all over again. Realize this. Use a pain filled break up as an opportunity to recognize and GET RID of these self esteem problems. Don't be a co-dependant, always defining who is important to you by what gaps of yours they can fill (mind out of the gutter people), instead be a complete person (self help jargon I know). Seek the permanent company of people you WANT around you, not NEED around you. Eventually you don't hurt anymore this way.

15.6 Grief as a rebound. OFTEN when you don't want a relationship to end and it does anyway you will hold onto the pain as a means of not accepting it as REALLY over. You fantasize about the other person crawling back begging to be with you, because they've seen the error of their ways. Not a good idea, this only prolongs things, focus on YOU and what she did to complete you that needs to be complete on its own by your own rethinking of self esteem, goals and ability to succeed. Remember YOU are physically the same now as before you were ever hurting over this woman, only now you aren't used to being you anymore, you are used to being you AND her together. The electricity in that brain of yours lies, true love is new love, not someone sticking around forever in order to fill each others needs. Romance writers of old are responsible for all the pain you've ever felt over lost love, remember monogamy and commitment, even the word love are a 100th as old as man, while sex and short pair bonds are timeless. No one ever killed themselves over losing a sex partner until someone decided co-dependant relationships were some mystical bond that must hurt when severed then told and wrote about it.

Just my thoughts on how to stay happy when it comes to love and relationships, tested, used, and approved by me, myself and I. Once I'm complete emotionally, I'll find an emotionally complete woman to attempt a permanent bond with. Til then as temporary as possible hot sexual unions, and a little pain in completing myself through future failed relationships and finally the search for the emotionally complete, semi attractive woman looks good to me.

16. WILLPOWER is all you need in life. As a rule try not to fantasize period, fantasy is what tells your super ego that it has what it wants, because you id knows it isn't possible. To purposefully fantasize, visualize and imagine things at length is to also tell the id that something isn't possible. You must have some slight visualization of anything to create initial desire, but to actively fantasize will only cause you to see something as impossible in the form of diminished willpower. ACTIONS are SPARKED by thoughts, not carried out by them. Thoughts paralyse action after a while. My one life lesson, WILL to do what YOU want in life is all you need.

RECAP:

This isn't rocket science. That's why it can be understood and adapted to various situations.

Look YOUR best, see lone wolf, realize she loves sex, get sexually turned on for her, approach her in sexual state, convey sexual state to her, get to know her while in sexual state, watch for her sexual state, isolate.

Or even easier to remember, 1. be sexual, 2. watch for her sexual state, 3. isolate. Those 3 things are all I take out into the field at a conscious level. The rest has to be filled in to each specific encounter and takes a little practice and time to get ingrained into you. I have seen it work the first run out, by a fucked up looking guy. Paralysis by analysis can be deadly to the willpower, so get on the ball, stop reading and take those 3 phrases, inside your head, out in the field with you and get laid.

And remember make the ho say no.

Gunwitch.